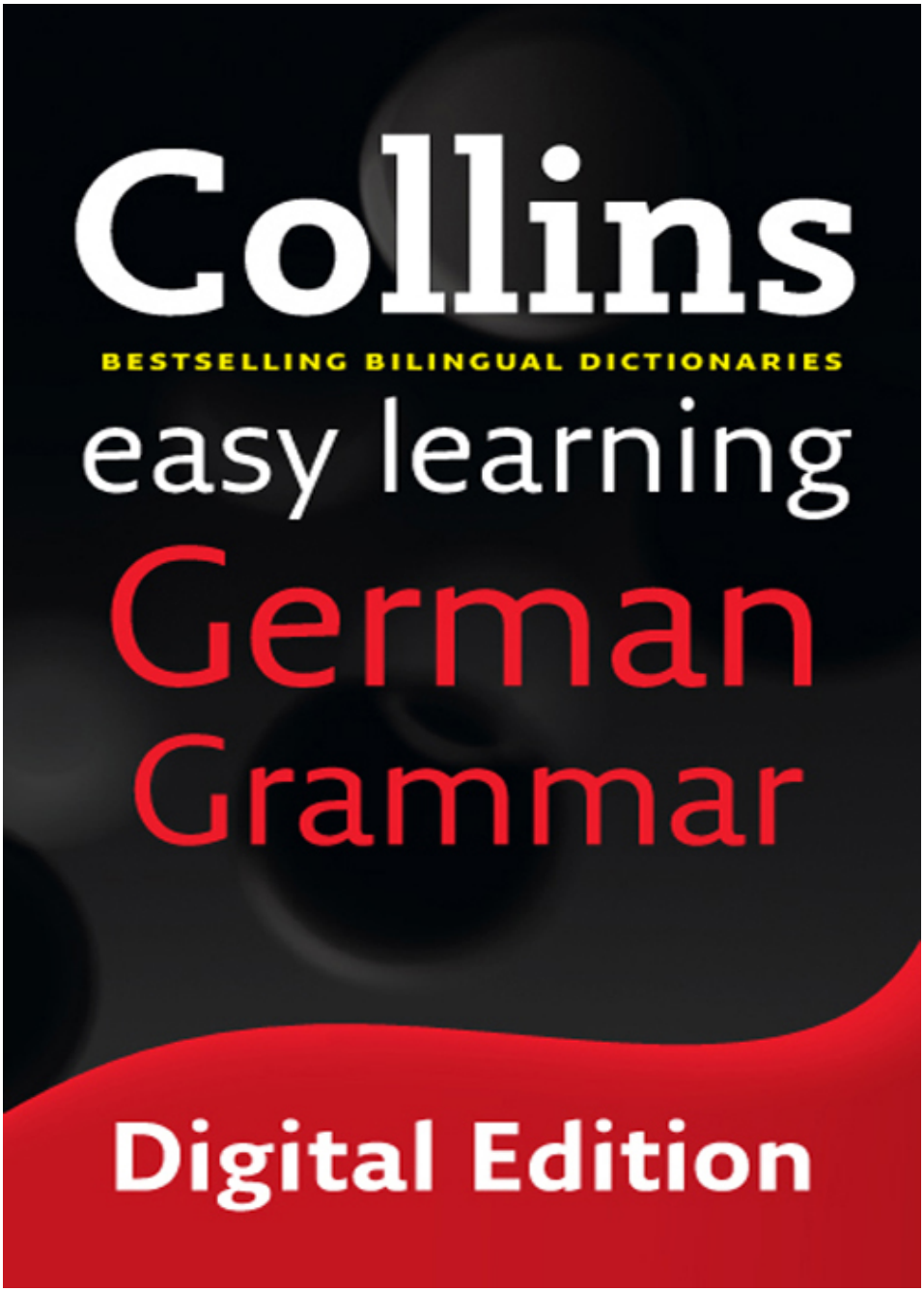
Collins
BESTSELLING BILINGUAL DICTIONARIES
easy learning
German
Grammar
Digital Edition

Collins
German Grammar

HarperCollins Publishers
Westerhill Road
Bishopbriggs
Glasgow
G64 2QT
Great Britain

Third Edition 2011

Reprint 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

© HarperCollins Publishers 2005, 2007, 2011

EPUB Edition © July 2011 ISBN 978-0-00-744470-0

Collins® is a registered trademark of HarperCollins Publishers Limited

www.collinslanguage.com

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Typeset by Davidson Publishing Solutions, Glasgow

Printed in India by
Gopsons Papers Ltd

SERIES EDITOR
Rob Scriven

MANAGING EDITOR
Gaëlle Amiot-Cadey

PROJECT CO-ORDINATOR
Susanne Reichert

CONTRIBUTOR
Horst Kopleck

We would like to give special thanks to Simone Conboy, Foreign Languages Consultant, for all her advice on teaching practice in today's classroom. Her contribution has been invaluable in the writing of this book.

Acknowledgements
We would like to thank those authors and publishers who kindly gave permission for copyright material to be used in the Collins Word Web. We would also like to thank Times Newspapers Ltd for providing valuable data.

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this e-book on

screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of HarperCollins.

Entered words that we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

HarperCollins does not warrant that www.collinsdictionary.com, www.collinslanguage.com or any other website mentioned in this title will be provided uninterrupted, that any website will be error free, that defects will be corrected, or that the website or the server that makes it available are free of viruses or bugs. For full terms and conditions please refer to the site terms provided on the website.

CONTENTS

Foreword for language teachers
Introduction for students
Glossary of grammar terms
Nouns
- Using nouns
- Gender
- The cases
- Forming plurals
- Weak nouns
- Proper nouns

Articles
Adjectives
- Using adjectives
- Making adjectives agree
- Adjectives used as nouns
- Some other points about adjectives
- Comparatives of adjectives
- Superlatives of adjectives

Adverbs
- How adverbs are used
- How adverbs are formed
- Adverbs of place
- Comparatives and superlatives of adverbs
- Word order with adverbs
- Emphasizers

Pronouns
- Personal pronouns: subject
- Personal pronouns: direct object
- Personal pronouns: indirect object

Personal pronouns: after prepositions
Possessive pronouns
Indefinite pronouns
Reflexive pronouns
Relative pronouns
Interrogative pronouns
Verbs
Weak, strong and mixed verbs
The present tense
Reflexive verbs
The imperative
Verb prefixes in the present tense
The perfect tense
The imperfect tense
The future tense
The conditional
The pluperfect tense
The subjunctive
The infinitive
Modal verbs
Impersonal verbs
There is/There are
Use of **es** as an anticipatory object
Verbs followed by prepositions
Verbs followed by the dative case
The passive
Prepositions
Using prepositions
Conjunctions
Coordinating conjunctions
Coordinating conjunctions with two parts
Subordinating conjunctions
Word order
Negatives

Questions
How to ask a question in German
Numbers
Time and date
Some common difficulties
General problems
Specific problems
Alphabet
Main Index
Verb Tables
Verb Index

Note on trademarks

Entered words which we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

FOREWORD FOR LANGUAGE TEACHERS

The ***Easy Learning German Grammar*** is designed to be used with both young and adult learners, as a group reference book to complement your course book during classes, or as a recommended text for self-study and homework/coursework.

The text specifically targets learners from *ab initio* to intermediate or GCSE level, and therefore its structural content and vocabulary have been matched to the relevant specifications up to and including Higher GCSE.

The approach aims to develop knowledge and understanding of grammar and to improve the ability of learners to apply it by:

- defining parts of speech at the start of each major section, with examples in English to clarify concepts
- minimizing the use of grammar terminology and providing clear explanations of terms both within the text and in the **Glossary**
- illustrating all points with examples (and their translations) based on topics and contexts which are relevant to beginner and intermediate course content

The text helps you develop positive attitudes to grammar learning in your classes by:

- giving clear, easy-to-follow explanations
- prioritizing content according to relevant specifications for the levels
- sequencing points to reflect course content, e.g. verb tenses
- highlighting useful **Tips** to deal with common difficulties
- summarizing **Key points** at the end of sections to consolidate learning

In addition to fostering success and building a thorough

foundation in German grammar, the optional **Grammar Extra** sections will encourage and challenge your learners to further their studies to higher and advanced levels.

INTRODUCTION FOR STUDENTS

Whether you are starting to learn German for the very first time, brushing up on topics you have studied in class, or revising for your GCSE exams, the *Easy Learning German Grammar* is here to help. This easy-to-use guide takes you through all the basics you will need to speak and understand modern, everyday German.

Newcomers can sometimes struggle with the technical terms they come across when they start to explore the grammar of a new language. The *Easy Learning German Grammar* explains how to get to grips with all the parts of speech you will need to know, using simple language and cutting out jargon.

The text is divided into sections, each dealing with a particular area of grammar. Each section can be studied individually, as numerous cross-references in the text point you to relevant points in other sections of the book for further information.

Every major section begins with an explanation of the area of grammar covered on the following pages. For quick reference, these definitions are also collected together on pages x–xiv in a glossary of essential grammar terms.

real German, complete with English translations, helping you understand the rules. Underlining has been used in examples throughout the text to highlight the grammatical point being explained.

- ✔ With masculine singular nouns in the nominative → use **ein**.
- ✔ With feminine singular nouns in the nominative → use **eine**.
- ✔ With plural nouns → use **die**, **der** or **den**, depending on the case.
- ✔ The indefinite article is not usually used when you say what jobs people do.

If you think you would like to continue with your German studies to a higher level, check out the **Grammar Extra** sections. These are intended for advanced students who are interested in knowing a little more about the structures they will come across beyond GCSE.

GLOSSARY OF GRAMMAR TERMS

ABSTRACT NOUN a word used to refer to a quality, idea, feeling or experience, rather than a physical object, for example, *size, reason, happiness*.

ACCUSATIVE CASE the form of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and articles used in German to show the direct object of a verb and after certain prepositions. Compare with **direct object**.

ACTIVE in an active sentence, the subject of the verb is the person or thing that carries out the action described by the verb.

ADJECTIVE a 'describing' word that tells you more about a person or thing, such as their appearance, colour, size or other qualities, for example, *pretty, blue, big*.

ADVERB a word usually used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs that gives more information about when, where, how or in what circumstances something happens, for example, *quickly, happily, now*.

AGREE (to) to change word endings according to whether you are referring to masculine, feminine, neuter, singular or plural people and things.

AGREEMENT see **agree (to)**.

APOSTROPHE S an ending ('s) added to a noun to show who or what someone or something belongs to, for example, *Danielle's dog, the doctor's husband, the book's cover*.

ARTICLE a word like *the, a* and *an*, which is used in front of a noun. Compare with **definite article** and **indefinite article**.

AUXILIARY VERB a verb such as *be, have* and *do* when used with a main verb to form some tenses and questions.

BASE FORM the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for example, *walk, have, be, go*. Compare with **infinitive**.

CASE the grammatical function of a noun, adjective, pronoun or article in a sentence.

CLAUSE a group of words containing a verb.

COMPARATIVE an adjective or adverb with *-er* on the end of it or *more* or *less* in front of it that is used to compare people, things or actions, for example, *slower, less important, more carefully*.

COMPOUND NOUN a word for a living being, thing or idea, which is made up of two or more words, for example, *tin-opener, railway station*.

CONDITIONAL a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or would be true under certain conditions, for example, *I would help you if I could*. It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, *Could you give me the bill*?

CONJUGATE (to) to give a verb different endings according to whether you are referring to *I, you, they* and so on, and according to whether you are referring to past, present or future, for example, *I have, she had, they will have*.

CONJUGATION a group of verbs which have the same endings or change according to the same pattern.

CONJUNCTION a word such as *and*, *because* or *but* that links two words or phrases of a similar type or two parts of a sentence, for example, *Diane and I have been friends for years; I left because I was bored*. Compare with **coordinating conjunction** and **subordinating conjunction**.

COORDINATING CONJUNCTION a word such as *and*, *but* or *however* that links two words, phrases or clauses.

CONSONANT a letter of the alphabet which is not a vowel, for example, *b, f, m, s, v*. Compare with **vowel**.

CONSTRUCTION an arrangement of words together in a phrase

or sentence.

DATIVE CASE the form of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and articles used in German to show the indirect object of a verb and after certain verbs and prepositions.

DECLENSION German nouns change according to their gender, case and number. This is called declension.

DEFINITE ARTICLE the word *the*. Compare with **indefinite article**.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE one of the words *this*, *that*, *these* and *those* used with a noun to point out a particular person or thing, for example, *this woman, that dog*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN one of the words *this, that, these* and *those* used instead of a noun to point out people or things, for example, *That looks fun*.

DIRECT OBJECT a noun referring to the person or thing affected by the action described by a verb, for example, *She wrote her name*; *I shut the window*. Compare with **indirect object**.

DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN a word such as *me, him, us* and *them* which is used instead of a noun to stand in for the person or thing directly affected by the action described by the verb. Compare with **indirect object pronoun**.

ENDING a form added to a verb stem, for example, ***geh*** → ***geht***, and to adjectives, nouns and pronouns depending on whether they refer to masculine, feminine, neuter, singular or plural things or persons.

FEMININE one of three classifications for the gender of German nouns which determines the form of articles, pronouns and adjectives used with the noun and to refer to it. The other two classifications are **masculine** and **neuter**.

FUTURE a verb tense used to talk about something that will happen or will be true.

GENDER whether a noun, article, pronoun or adjective is feminine, masculine or neuter.

GENITIVE CASE the form of nouns, adjectives, pronouns and articles used in German to show that something belongs to someone and after certain prepositions and verbs.

IMPERATIVE the form of a verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Shut the door!; Sit down!; Don't go!*

IMPERFECT one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what was happening, for example, *It was sunny at the weekend* or what used to happen, for example, *I used to walk to school*. Compare with **perfect**.

IMPERSONAL VERB one which does not refer to a real person or thing and where the subject is represented by *it*, for example, *It's going to rain; It's 10 o'clock*.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE one of a small group of adjectives used to talk about people or things in a general way, without saying exactly who or what they are, for example, *several, all, every*.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE the words *a* and *an*. Compare with **definite article**.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN a small group of pronouns such as *everything, nobody* and *something*, which are used to refer to people or things in a general way, without saying exactly who or what they are.

INDIRECT OBJECT a noun or pronoun typically used in English with verbs that take two objects. For example, in *I gave the carrot to the rabbit, the rabbit* is the indirect object and *carrot* is the direct object. With some German verbs, what is the direct object in English is treated as an indirect object in, for example, **Ich helfe ihr** ' *I'm helping her*. Compare with **direct object**.

INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN when a verb has two objects (a direct one and an indirect one), the indirect object pronoun is used instead of a noun to show the person or the thing the action

is intended to benefit or harm, for example, *me* in *He gave me a book* and *Can you get me a towel*? Compare with **direct object pronoun**.

INDIRECT SPEECH the words you use *to* report what someone has said when you aren't using their actual words, for example, *He said that he was going out*.

INFINITIVE the form of the verb with *to* in front of it and without any endings added, for example, *to walk, to have, to be, to go*. Compare with **base form**.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE a question word used with a noun to ask *who?, what?* or *which?,* for example, *What instruments do you play?*; *Which shoes do you like?*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN one of the words *who, whose, whom, what* and *which* when they are used instead of a noun to ask questions, for example, *What's happening?; Who's coming?*

MASCULINE one of three classifications for the gender of German nouns which determines the form of articles, pronouns and adjectives used with the noun and to refer to it. The other two classifications are **feminine** and **neuter**.

MIXED VERB a German verb whose stem changes its vowel to form the imperfect tense and the past participle, like strong verbs. Its past participle is formed by adding *–t* to the verb stem, like weak verbs. Compare with **strong verb** and **weak verb**.

MODAL VERBS are used to modify or change other verbs to show such things as *ability, permission* or *necessity*. For example, *he can swim*, *may I come*? and *he ought to go*.

NEGATIVE a question or statement which contains a word such as *not, never* or *nothing*, and is used to say that something is not happening or is not true, for example, *I never eat meat*; *Don't you love me?*

NEUTER one of three classifications for the gender of German nouns which determines the form of articles, pronouns and

adjectives used with the noun and to refer to it. The other two classifications are **masculine** and **feminine**.

NOMINATIVE CASE the basic form of nouns, pronouns, adjectives and articles used in German and the one you find in the dictionary. It is used for the subject of the sentence. Compare with **subject**.

NOUN a 'naming' word for a living being, thing or idea, for example, *woman, desk, happiness, Andrew*.

OBJECT a noun or pronoun which refers to a person or thing that is affected by the action described by the verb. Compare with **direct object**, **indirect object** and **subject**.

OBJECT PRONOUN one of the set of pronouns including *me*, *him* and *them*, which are used instead of the noun as the object of a verb or preposition. Compare with **subject pronoun**.

ORDINAL NUMBER a number used to indicate where something comes in an order or sequence, for example, *first, fifth, sixteenth*.

PART OF SPEECH one of the categories to which all words are assigned and which describe their forms and how they are used in sentences, for example, *noun, verb, adjective, preposition, pronoun*.

PASSIVE a form of the verb that is used when the subject of the verb is the person or thing that is affected by the action, for example, *we were told*.

PAST PARTICIPLE a verb form, for example, *watched, swum*, which is used with an auxiliary verb to form perfect and pluperfect tenses and passives. Some past participles are also used as adjectives, for example, *a broken watch*.

PERFECT one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially about actions that took place and were completed in the past. Compare with **imperfect**.

PERSONAL PRONOUN one of the group of words including *I, you* and *they* which are used to refer to yourself, the people you are talking to, or the people or things you are talking about.

PLUPERFECT one of the verb tenses used to describe something that had happened or had been true at a point in the past, for example, *I had forgotten to finish my homework*.

PLURAL the form of a word which is used to refer to more than one person or thing. Compare with **singular**.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE one of the words *my, your, his, her, its, our* or *their*, used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN one of the words *mine, yours, hers, his, ours* or *theirs*, used instead of a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another.

PREPOSITION a word such as *at, for, with, into* or *from*, which is usually followed by a noun, pronoun or, in English, a word ending in *-ing*. Prepositions show how people and things relate to the rest of the sentence, for example, *She's at home*; *a tool for cutting grass*; *It's from David*.

PRESENT a verb form used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly, and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student*; *I travel to college by train*; *I'm studying languages*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE a verb form ending in *-ing* which is used in English to form verb tenses, and which may be used as an adjective or a noun, for example, *What are you doing?*; *the setting sun*; *Swimming is easy!*

PRONOUN a word which you use instead of a noun, when you do not need or want to name someone or something directly, for example, *it, you, none*.

PROPER NOUN the name of a person, place, organization or thing. Proper nouns are always written with a capital letter, for example, *Kevin, Glasgow, Europe, London Eye*.

QUESTION WORD a word such as *why, where, who, which* or *how* which is used to ask a question.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN a word ending in *-self* or *-selves*, such as *myself* or *themselves*, which refers back to the subject, for example, *He hurt himself*; *Take care of yourself*.

REFLEXIVE VERB a verb where the subject and object are the same, and where the action 'reflects back' on the subject. A reflexive verb is used with a reflexive pronoun such as *myself, yourself, herself*, for example, *I washed myself*; *He shaved himself*.

RELATIVE CLAUSE part of the sentence in which the relative pronoun appears.

RELATIVE PRONOUN a word such as *that, who* or *which*, when it is used to link two parts of a sentence together.

SENTENCE a group of words which usually has a verb and a subject. In writing, a sentence has a capital letter at the beginning and a full stop, question mark or exclamation mark at the end.

SINGULAR the form of a word which is used to refer to one person or thing. Compare with **plural**.

STEM the main part of a verb to which endings are added.

STRONG VERB a German verb whose stem changes its vowel to form the imperfect tense and the past participle. Its past participle is not formed by adding *–t* to the verb stem. Also known as irregular verbs. Compare with **weak verb**.

SUBJECT the noun or pronoun used to refer to the person which does the action described by the verb, for example, *My cat doesn't drink milk*. Compare with **object**.

SUBJECT PRONOUN a word such as *I*, *he*, *she* and *they* which carries out the action described by the verb. Pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who is being talked about, for example, *My brother isn't here at the moment*. *He'll be back in an hour*. Compare with **object pronoun**.

SUBJUNCTIVE a verb form used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show doubt about whether something will happen or whether something is true. It is only

used occasionally in modern English, for example, *If I were you, I wouldn't bother.*; *So be it.*

SUBORDINATE CLAUSE a clause which begins with a subordinating conjunction such as *because* or *while* and which must be used with a main clause. In German, the verb always goes to the end of the subordinate clause.

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTION a word such as *when*, *because* or *while* that links the subordinate clause and the main clause in a sentence. Compare with **subordinate clause**.

SUPERLATIVE an adjective or adverb with *-est* on the end of it or *most* or *least* in front of it that is used to compare people, things or actions, for example, *thinnest, most quickly, least interesting.*

SYLLABLE consonant + vowel units that make up the sounds of a word, for example, ca-the-dral (3 syllables), im-po-ssi-ble (4 syllables).

TENSE the form of a verb which shows whether you are referring to the past, present or future.

VERB a 'doing' word which describes what someone or something does, what someone or something is, or what happens to them, for example, *be*, *sing*, *live*.

VOWEL one of the letters *a, e, i, o* or *u*. Compare with **consonant**.

WEAK VERB a German verb whose stem does not change its vowel to form the imperfect tense and the past participle. Its past participle is formed by adding *–t* to the verb stem. Also known as regular verbs. Compare with **strong verbs**.

NOUNS

What is a noun?
A **noun** is a 'naming' word for a living being, thing or idea, for example, *woman*, *happiness*, *Andrew*. German nouns change, according to their gender, case and number. This is called declension.

Using nouns

➤ In German, all nouns are either masculine, feminine or neuter. This is called their gender. In English, we call all things – for example, *table, car, book, apple* – 'it', but in German, even words for things have a gender. It is important to know that the gender of German nouns rarely relates to the sex of the person or thing it refers to. For example, in German, the word for 'man' is masculine, but the word for 'girl' is neuter and the word for 'person' is feminine.

der Mann	man
das Mädchen	girl
die Person	person

Tip

German nouns are always written with a capital letter.

➤ Whenever you are using a noun, you need to know whether it is masculine, feminine or neuter as this affects the form of other words used with it, such as:

- adjectives that describe it
- articles (such as **der** or **ein**) that go before it
- pronouns (such as **er** or **sie**) that replace it

➪ *For more information on **Adjectives**, **Articles** or **Pronouns**, see pages 40, 25 and 69.*

➤ You can find information about gender by looking the word up in a dictionary – in the *Easy Learning German Dictionary*, for example, you will find the definite article (the word for *the*) in front of the word. When you come across a new noun, always learn the word for *the* that goes with it to help you remember its gender.

- **der** before a noun tells you it is masculine
- **die** before a noun tells you it is feminine

- **das** before a noun tells you it is neuter

➪ *For more information on the **Definite article**, see page 25.*

➤ We refer to something as singular when we are talking about just one, and as plural when we are talking about more than one. The singular is the form of the noun you will usually find when you look a noun up in the dictionary. As in English, nouns in German change their form in the plural.

die Katze cat → **die Katzen** cats

➤ Adjectives, articles and pronouns are also affected by whether a noun is singular or plural.

Tip

Remember that you have to use the right word for *the, a* and so on according to the gender and case of the German noun.

Gender

➤ In German a noun can be masculine, feminine or neuter. Gender is quite unpredictable – the best thing is simply to learn each noun with its definite article, that is the word for *the* (**der**, **die** or **das**) which goes with it:

der Teppich	carpet
die Zeit	time
das Bild	picture

However, there are some clues which can help you work out or remember the gender of a noun, as explained below.

1 Masculine nouns

➤ Nouns referring to male people and animals are masculine.

der Mann	man
der Löwe	(male) lion

➤ Seasons, months, days of the week, and points of the compass are masculine.

der Sommer	summer
der August	August
der Freitag	Friday
der Norden	north

➤ Most nouns referring to things that perform an action are also masculine.

der Wecker	alarm clock
der Computer	computer

Grammar Extra!

German nouns taken from other languages and ending in **-ant**, **-ast**, **-ismus**, and **-or** are masculine:

der Trabant	satellite
der Ballast	ballast

der Kapitalismus	capitalism
der Tresor	safe

➤ Nouns with the following endings are masculine.

Masculine Ending	Example	Meaning
-ich	**der Teppich**	carpet
-ig	**der Essig**	vinegar
-ling	**der Frühling**	spring

Key points

✔ Nouns referring to male people and animals are masculine.

✔ Seasons, months, days of the week, weather and points of the compass are masculine.

2 Feminine nouns

➤ Most nouns ending in **-e** are feminine.

die Falte	crease, wrinkle
die Brücke	bridge

Note that male people or animals ending in **-e** are masculine, and, nouns beginning with **Ge-** and ending in **-e** are normally neuter.

der Löwe	the lion
das Getreide	crop

➤ Nouns with the following endings are feminine.

Feminine Ending	Example	Meaning
-heit	**die Schönheit**	beauty
-keit	**die Sehenswürdigkeit**	sight
-schaft	**die Gewerkschaft**	trade union
-ung	**die Zeitung**	newspaper

-ei	**die Bäckerei**	bakery

Grammar Extra!

German nouns, some taken from other languages and ending in **-anz**, **-enz**, **-ie**, **-ik**, **-ion**, **-tät**, **-ur** are feminine, with some exceptions.

die Distanz	distance	BUT: der Kranz	wreath
die Konkurrenz	competition		
die Theorie	theory	BUT: das Knie	knee
die Panik	panic	BUT: der Pazifik	Pacific
die Union	union	BUT: der Spion	spy
die Elektrizität	electricity		
die Temperatur	temperature	BUT: das Abitur	A levels

- Numbers used in counting, for example *one*, *three*, *fifty* are feminine.

Er hat eine Drei gekriegt.	He got a three.

- In German, there are sometimes very different words for male and female, just as in English.

der Mann	man
die Frau	woman
der Vater	father
die Mutter	mother
der Bulle	bull
die Kuh	cow

- Many masculine German nouns can be made feminine by adding **-in** in the singular and **-innen** in the plural.

der Lehrer	(male) teacher
die Lehrerin	(female) teacher
Lehrer und Lehrerinnen	(male and female) teachers
der Leser	(male) reader
die Leserin	(female) reader
unsere Leser und Leserinnen	our readers (male and female)

Grammar Extra!

Some German adjectives are used as feminine nouns. They have feminine adjective endings which change according to the article which comes before them.

eine Deutsche	a German woman
die Abgeordnete	the woman MP

➪ *For more information on **Adjectives used as nouns** and for **Feminine adjective endings**, see pages 50 and 42.*

Key points

- ✔ Most nouns ending in **-e** are feminine.
- ✔ Many feminine nouns end in: **-heit**, **-keit**, **-schaft**, **-ung**, **-ei**.
- ✔ Masculine German words referring to people can be made feminine by adding **-in** in the singular and **-innen** in the plural.
- ✔ Numbers used in counting are feminine.

3 Neuter nouns

➤ Most nouns beginning with **Ge-** are neuter.

das Geschirr	crockery, dishes
das Geschöpf	creature
das Getreide	crop

➤ Nouns ending in **-lein** or **-chen** are also neuter. These are

called the diminutive form and refer to small persons or objects.

Endings to form the diminutive	Example	Meaning
-lein	**das Kindlein**	little child
-chen	**das Häuschen**	little house

Note that if these words have one of the vowels **a**, **o** or **u**, an umlaut should be added above the vowel. The final **-e** should also be dropped before these endings.

der Bach → Bäch → das Bächlein	(small) stream
die Katze → Kätz → das Kätzchen	kitten

➤ Fractions are also neuter.

ein Drittel davon	a third of it

➤ Nouns which refer to young humans and animals are neuter.

das Baby	baby
das Kind	child
das Kalb	calf
das Lamm	lamb

Note that the animals themselves can be any gender.

der Hund	dog
die Schlange	snake
das Vieh	cattle

➤ Infinitives (the ‘ *to*’ form of verbs) used as nouns are neuter.

das Schwimmen	swimming
das Spielen	playing
das Radfahren	cycling

*For more information on **Infinitives**, see page 134.*

➤ Most nouns with the following endings are neuter.

Neuter Ending	Example	Meaning
-nis	**das Ereignis**	event
-tum	**das Eigentum**	property

Grammar Extra!

German nouns taken from other languages and ending in **-at**, **-ett**, **-fon**, **-ma**, **-ment**, **-um** are neuter.

das Reservat	reservation		
das Tablett	tray		
das Telefon	phone		
das Thema	subject, topic		
das Medikament	drug		
das Ultimatum	ultimatum	BUT: **der Reichtum**	wealth
das Studium	studies		

Key points

- ✔ Most nouns beginning with **Ge-** are neuter.
- ✔ The diminutive form of nouns is neuter.
- ✔ Nouns referring to young humans and animals are neuter.
- ✔ Infinitives used as nouns are neuter.
- ✔ Nouns ending in **-nis** or **-tum** are neuter.

4 Compound nouns

What is a compound noun?
A **compound noun** is a noun made up of two or more words, for example, *tin-opener* and *railway station*.

➤ In German, these words nearly always take their gender from the LAST noun of the compound word.

die Armbanduhr (**Armband** + **die Uhr**)	wristwatch	
der Tomatensalat (**Tomaten** + **der Salat**)	tomato salad	
der Fußballspieler (**Fußball** + **der Spieler**)	footballer	

Grammar Extra!

Some German nouns have more than one gender. A few nouns have two genders and sometimes one of them can only be used in certain regions.

der/das Marzipan	marzipan	(***der Marzipan*** *is used mostly in Austria*)
der/das Keks	biscuit	(***das Keks*** *is used mostly in Austria*)
der/das Kaugummi	chewing gum	

Other nouns have two genders and the meaning of the word changes depending on which gender it has.

der Band	volume, book
das Band	ribbon, band, tape; bond
der See	lake
die See	sea
der Leiter	leader, manager
die Leiter	ladder

➤ In German, abbreviations have the same gender as the word they come from.

die BRD	the Federal Republic of Germany (from **die Bundesrepublik Deutschland**)
die DB	the German Railways (from **die Deutsche Bahn**)
das ZDF	German TV channel (from **das Zweite Deutsche Fernsehen**)

Key points

- ✔ Compound nouns are nouns made up of two or more words and usually take their gender from the last part of the compound word.
- ✔ Some German nouns have more than one gender and this can affect their meaning.
- ✔ German abbreviations have the same gender as the words they come from.

The Cases

➤ In German, there are four grammatical cases – nominative, accusative, genitive and dative. The case you should use depends on the grammatical function of the noun in the sentence.

1 The nominative case

➤ The nominative case is the basic form of the noun and is the one you find in the dictionary.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	der Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	ein Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Accusative	den Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	einen Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied

➪ *For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

➤ The nominative case is used for:

- the subject of the sentence, that is the person, animal or thing 'doing' the action

Das Mädchen singt.	The girl is singing.
Die Katze schläft.	The cat is sleeping.

- after the verbs **sein** (meaning *to be*) and **werden** (meaning *to be, to become*)

Er ist ein guter Lehrer.	He is a good teacher.
Das wird ein Pullover.	It's going to be a jumper.

2 The accusative case

➤ The article for feminine and neuter nouns in the accusative case has the same form as in the nominative. **Der** for masculine nouns changes to **den** and **ein** to **einen**.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	der Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	ein Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Accusative	den Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	einen Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied

➪ *For more information on* ***Articles****, see page 25.*

➤ The accusative case is used:

- to show the direct object of a verb. This is the person, animal or thing affected by the action of the verb.

  He gave me a book. → *What did he give me*? → a book (= *direct object*)

  Can you get me a towel? → *What can you get me*? → a towel (= *direct object*)

  Ich sehe den Hund. ' *What do I see*? → **den Hund** (= *direct object*)

  Er hat ein Lied gesungen. → *What did he sing*? → **ein Lied** (= *direct object)*

- after certain prepositions (words in English such as *at*, *for*, *with*, *into* or *from*) which are always used with the accusative.

Es ist für seine Freundin.	It's for his girlfriend.
Es ist schwierig ohne einen Wagen.	It's difficult without a car.
durch das Rauchen wurde ich krank.	Smoking made me ill.

➪ *For more information on* ***Prepositions followed by the accusative case****, see page 156.*

- after certain prepositions of place when movement is involved:

an	on, to, at
auf	on, in, to, at
hinter	behind
in	in, into, to
neben	next to, beside
über	over, across, above
unter	under, among
vor	in front of, before
zwischen	between

Stell dein Rad neben mein Auto.	Put your bike next to my car.
Sie legten ein Brett über das Loch.	They put a board over the hole.

Note that when there is no movement involved after these prepositions, the dative case is used.

Sie geht in die Stadt. (*accusative*)	She's going into town.
Er war in der Stadt. (*dative*)	He was in town.

For more information on ***Prepositions followed by the accusative or the dative case****, see page 158.*

- in many expressions of time and place which do not have a preposition

Das macht sie jeden Donnerstag.	She does that every Thursday.
Die Schule ist einen Kilometer entfernt.	The school is a kilometre away.

- in some set expressions

Guten Abend!	Good evening!
Vielen Dank!	Thank you very much!

3 The genitive case

➤ **Der** for masculine nouns and **das** for neuter nouns change to **des**. **Ein** changes to **eines**. The endings of masculine and neuter singular nouns also change in the genitive case.

➤ **-s** is added to masculine and neuter nouns ending in **-en**, **-el**, **-er**.

der Wagen car → **des Wagens**	
das Rauchen smoking → **des Rauchens**	
der Esel donkey → **des Esels**	
der Computer computer → **des Computers**	
Ich mag die Farbe des Wagens.	I like the colour of the car.
Die Größe des Computers ist nicht wichtig.	The size of the computer isn't important.

➤ **-es** is added to most masculine and neuter nouns of one syllable ending in a consonant.

der Freund friend → **des Freundes**
der Mann man → **des Mannes**

der Sitz seat → **des Sitzes**
der Arzt doctor → **des Arztes**
der Tisch table → **des Tisches**
das Schloss castle → **des Schlosses**

Die Schwester des Arztes hilft manchmal in der Sprechstunde.	The doctor's sister helps him in the surgery sometimes.
Das Museum befindet sich in der Nähe des Schlosses.	The museum is near the castle.

➤ **Die** changes to **der** and **eine** to **einer** in the genitive. The endings of feminine singular nouns in the genitive case are the same as in the nominative.

die Ärztin (female) doctor → **der Ärztin**

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	der Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	ein Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Accusative	den Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	einen Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Genitive	des Wagens	der Dose	des Lieds
	eines Wagens	einer Dose	eines Lieds

*For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

➤ The genitive case is used:

- to show that something belongs to someone

Das Auto der Frau war rot.	The woman's car was red.
Der Hund meiner Mutter ist ganz klein.	My mother's dog is really small.

- after certain prepositions which always take the genitive

Wegen des schlechten Wetters müssen wir nach Hause gehen.	We'll have to go home because of the bad weather.
Trotz ihrer Krankheit geht sie jeden Tag spazieren.	She goes for a walk every day, despite her illness.

- in some expressions of time

eines Tages	one day

4 The dative case

➤ **Der** changes to **dem** and **ein** to **einem** in the dative. Singular nouns in the dative have the same form as in the nominative.

dem Auto	to the car
dem Mädchen	to the girl

➤ **Die** changes to **der** and **eine** to **einer** in the dative. Singular nouns in the dative have the same form as in the nominative.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	der Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	ein Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Accusative	den Wagen	die Dose	das Lied
	einen Wagen	eine Dose	ein Lied
Genitive	des Wagens	der Dose	des Lieds
	eines Wagens	einer Dose	eines Lieds
Dative	dem Wagen	der Dose	dem Lied
	einem Wagen	einer Dose	einem Lied

➪ *For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

➤ **-e** is added to some nouns in certain set phrases.

Wir gehen nach Hause.	We're going home.
Er hat sich zu Tode gearbeitet.	He worked himself to death.

Grammar Extra!

-e may also be added to the dative singular of masculine and neuter nouns to make the phrase easier to pronounce.

zu welchem Zwecke?	to what purpose?

➤ The dative case is used:

- to show the indirect object of a verb – an indirect object answers the question *who to/for*? or *to/for what*?

He gave the man the book. ' *Who did he give the book to*? ' the man (= *noun indirect object*)

Er gab dem Mann das Buch.	He gave the man the book.

- after certain verbs

Er hilft seiner Mutter im Haushalt.	He helps his mother with the housework.

➪ *For more information on **Verbs followed by the dative case**, see page 148.*

- after certain prepositions which always take the dative

Nach dem Essen gingen wir spazieren.	After eating we went for a walk.
Er kam mit einer Freundin.	He came with a friend.

➪ *For more information on **Prepositions followed by the dative case**, see page 153.*

- after certain prepositions to show position

an	on, to, at
auf	on, in, to, at
hinter	behind
in	in, into, to
neben	next to, beside
über	over, across, above
unter	under, among
vor	in front of, before
zwischen	between
Ich sitze neben dem Fenster.	I'm sitting next to the window.
Die Katze lag unter dem Tisch.	The cat lay under the table.

☑ Note that when there is some movement involved after these prepositions, the accusative case is used.

Er war in der Stadt. (*dative*)	He was in town.
Sie geht in die Stadt. (*accusative*)	She's going into town.

➪ *For more information on **Prepositions followed by the accusative or the dative case**, see page 158.*

- in certain expressions

Mir ist kalt.	I'm cold.

- instead of the possessive adjective (*my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our* or *their*) to refer to parts of the body and items of clothing

Ich habe mir die Haare gewaschen.	I washed my hair.
Zieh dir die Jacke aus.	Take your jacket off.

➪ *For more information on **Possessive adjectives**, see page 37.*

➤ Changes to the definite and indefinite articles **der**, **die** or **das** and **ein**, **eine** or **ein** for each case are summarized in the table below, to help make it easier for you to remember them.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular
Nominative	der	die	das
	ein	eine	ein
Accusative	den	die	das
	einen	eine	ein
Genitive	des	der	des
	eines	einer	eines
Dative	dem	der	dem
	einem	einer	einem

➪ *For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

Key points

✔ In German, there are four grammatical cases – nominative, accusative, genitive and dative.

✔ The case you use depends on the grammatical function of the noun in the sentence.

✔ The nominative case is used to show the subject of a sentence and after the verbs **sein** and **werden**.

✔ The accusative case is used to show the direct object of a sentence, and after certain prepositions.

- ✔ The genitive case is used to show that something belongs to somebody, and after certain prepositions.
- ✔ The dative case is used to show the indirect object of a sentence, and after certain prepositions and verbs.

Forming plurals

➤ In English we usually make nouns plural by adding an *-s* to the end (*garden ' gardens*; *house ' houses*), although we do have some nouns which are irregular and do not follow this pattern (*mouse ' mice*; *child ' children*).

➤ In German, there are several different ways of making nouns plural.

➤ The definite article changes in the plural, as shown in the table below.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	der	die	das	die
Accusative	den	die	das	die
Genitive	des	der	des	der
Dative	dem	der	dem	den

➪ *For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

Tip

Nouns in the dative plural ALWAYS end in **-n**, except those nouns which come from other languages. Most of their plural forms end in **-s**. For example:

Mit den Autos hatte sie ständig Probleme.	The cars caused her constant problems.

1 Feminine plural nouns ending in -n, -en, -nen

➤ Most German feminine nouns form their plural by adding **-n**, **-en** or **-nen** to their singular form.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	**die Blume** (flower)	**die Blumen**
	die Frau (woman)	**die Frauen**

	die Lehrerin (teacher)	die Lehrerinnen
Accusative	die Blume	die Blumen
	die Frau	die Frauen
	die Lehrerin	die Lehrerinnen
Genitive	der Blume	der Blumen
	der Frau	der Frauen
	der Lehrerin	der Lehrerinnen
Dative	der Blume	den Blumen
	der Frau	den Frauen
	der Lehrerin	den Lehrerinnen

Die Blumen waren nicht teuer.	The flowers weren't expensive.
Die Lehrerinnen sind ziemlich jung.	The (female) teachers are quite young.
Das Leben der Frauen in vielen Ländern ist schwierig.	In many countries, women's lives are difficult.
Wo gehst du mit den Blumen hin?	Where are you going with the flowers?

2 Nouns with no ending in the plural

➤ Many nouns have no plural ending – these are mostly masculine or neuter nouns ending in **-en**, **-er** or **-el**.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	**der Kuchen** (cake)	**die Kuchen**
	der Lehrer (teacher)	**die Lehrer**
	der Onkel (uncle)	**die Onkel**
Accusative	**den Kuchen**	**die Kuchen**
	den Lehrer	**die Lehrer**
	den Onkel	**die Onkel**
Genitive	**des Kuchens**	**der Kuchen**
	des Lehrers	**der Lehrer**
	des Onkels	**der Onkel**
Dative	**dem Kuchen**	**den Kuchen**
	dem Lehrer	**den Lehrern**
	dem Onkel	**den Onkeln**

Die Kuchen sehen lecker aus.	The cakes look delicious.
Die Onkel kommen morgen an.	The uncles are coming tomorrow.
Das war die Schuld der Lehrer.	That was the teachers' fault.
Es gibt ein kleines Problem mit den Kuchen.	There's a slight problem withthe cakes.

➤ Some of these nouns also have an umlaut added to the first vowel **a**, **o** or **u** in the plural.

Case	Singular	Plural

Nominative	**der Apfel** (apple)	**die Äpfel**
	der Garten (garden)	**die Gärten**
Accusative	**den Apfel**	**die Äpfel**
	den Garten	**die Gärten**
Genitive	**des Apfels**	**der Äpfel**
	des Gartens	**der Gärten**
Dative	**dem Apfel**	**den Äpfeln**
	dem Garten	**den Gärten**

Die Äpfel sind nicht reif genug.	The apples aren't ripe enough.
Die Gärten waren wunderschön.	The gardens were beautiful.
Schau mal die Größe der Äpfel an!	Look at the size of the apples!
Den Äpfeln fehlt ein bisschen Sonne.	The apples need a bit of sun.

3 Plural nouns ending in ¨-e

➤ Some masculine nouns add an umlaut above the first vowel **a**, **o** or **u** and an **-e** ending to form the plural. A few feminine nouns with **a** in the stem also follow this pattern. Nouns in this group often have one syllable only.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	**der Stuhl** (chair)	**die Stühle**
	die Angst (fear)	**die Ängste**
Accusative	**den Stuhl**	**die Stühle**
	die Angst	**die Ängste**
Genitive	**des Stuhl(e)s**	**der Stühle**
	der Angst	**der Ängste**
Dative	**dem Stuhl**	**den Stühlen**
	der Angst	**den Ängsten**

Die Stühle sind neu.	The chairs are new.
Die Regierung muss die Ängste der Bevölkerung ernst nehmen.	The government has to take the population's fears seriously.
Die Farbe der Stühle.	The colour of the chairs.
Der Tischler macht den Stühlen neue Beine.	The carpenter is making new legs for the chairs.

4 Masculine and neuter plural nouns ending in -e, -er or ¨-er

➤ Masculine or neuter nouns often add **-e** or **-er** to form the plural.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	**das Geschenk** (present)	**die Geschenke**
	der Tisch (table)	**die Tische**

	das Kind (child)	die Kinder
Accusative	das Geschenk	die Geschenke
	den Tisch	die Tische
	das Kind	die Kinder
Genitive	des Geschenks	der Geschenke
	des Tisches	der Tische
	des Kindes	der Kinder
Dative	dem Geschenk	den Geschenken
	dem Tisch	den Tischen
	dem Kind	den Kindern

Die Geschenke sind auf dem Tisch.	The presents are on the table.
Ich muss die Kinder abholen.	I have to pick up the children.
Die Auswahl der Tische im Laden war groß.	The shop had a large selection of tables.
Sie geht mit den Kindern spazieren.	She's going for a walk with the children.

➤ Some masculine and neuter nouns add an umlaut above the first vowel **a**, **o** or **u** and an **-er** ending in the plural.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	das Dach (roof)	die Dächer
	der Mann (man)	die Männer
Accusative	das Dach	die Dächer
	den Mann	die Männer
Genitive	des Dach(e)s	der Dächer
	des Mannes	der Männer
Dative	dem Dach	den Dächern
	dem Mann	den Männern

Die Dächer werden repariert.	The roofs are being repaired.
Man hatte die Männer völlig vergessen.	The men had been completely forgotten.
Was ist die Rolle der Männer in unserer Gesellschaft?	What is the role of men in our society?
Die Frauen sollten den Männern nicht immer recht geben.	Women should not always agree with men.

5 Some unusual plurals

➤ There is another group of German nouns which don't follow any of the rules for forming plurals – you just have to remember them! Here are some of the most common ones. As you will see, many of them are words from other languages, and it is common for such words to form their plural by adding **-s**.

Singular	Meaning	Plural
das Auto	car	die Autos
das Hotel	hotel	die Hotels
das Restaurant	restaurant	die Restaurants
das Baby	baby	die Babys
das Thema	theme, topic, subject	die Themen
das Drama	drama	die Dramen
das Risiko	risk	die Risiken
der Park	park	die Parks
der Chef	boss, chief, head	die Chefs
die Firma	firm	die Firmen

Die Hotels in der Stadt sind ziemlich teuer.	The hotels in town are quite expensive.
Die Risiken sind sehr hoch.	The risks are very high.
Die Kinder finden die Babys ganz niedlich.	The children think the babies are really cute.
Was hältst du von den Preisen der Autos?	What do you think of the prices of the cars?
Das ist die Stadt mit den vielen Parks.	That's the town with all the parks.

6 Plural versus singular

➤ Some nouns are always plural in English, but singular in German.

eine Brille	glasses, spectacles
eine Schere	scissors
eine Hose	trousers

➤ These nouns are only used in the plural in German to mean more than one pair.

zwei Hosen	two pairs of trousers

7 Nouns of measurement and quantity

➤ These nouns, used to describe the quantity or size of something, usually remain singular in German, even if preceded by a plural number.

Möchten Sie zwei Stück?	Would you like two?
Ich wiege fünfzig Kilo.	I weigh fifty kilos.

➤ The substance which they measure follows in the same case as

the noun of quantity, and NOT in the genitive case as in English.

Sie hat drei Tassen Kaffee getrunken.	She drank three cups of coffee.
Er wollte zwei Kilo Kartoffeln.	He wanted two kilos of potatoes.
Drei Glas Weißwein, bitte!	Three glasses of white wine, please.

Key points

- ✔ Most German feminine nouns form their plural by adding **-n**, **-en** or -nen to their singular form.
- ✔ Many nouns have no plural ending – these are mostly masculine or neuter singular nouns ending in **-en**, **-er** or **-el**. Some of these nouns also have an umlaut added to the vowel in the plural.
- ✔ Some masculine nouns add an umlaut above the first vowel **a**, **o** or **u** and an **-e** ending to form the plural. A few feminine nouns with **a** in the stem also follow this pattern.
- ✔ Masculine and neuter nouns often add **-e** or **-er** in the plural, and can sometimes add an umlaut above the first vowel **a**, **o** or **u**.
- ✔ There are some unusual plural nouns in German which don't follow any pattern.
- ✔ Some nouns are always plural in English, but singular in German.
- ✔ Nouns of measurement and quantity usually

remain singular even if preceded by a plural number.

✔ The substance which they measure follows in the same case as the noun of quantity.

Weak nouns

➤ As we have seen, German nouns may change, according to their gender, case and number. This is called declension.

➤ Some masculine nouns have a weak declension – this means that they end in **-en** or, if the word ends in a vowel, in **-n**, in every case EXCEPT in the nominative singular case.

➤ Weak masculine nouns follow the pattern shown.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	der Junge	die Jungen
Accusative	den Jungen	die Jungen
Genitive	des Jungen	der Jungen
Dative	dem Jungen	den Jungen

➤ Weak masculine nouns include:

- those ending in **-og(e)** referring to men

der Psychologe	the psychologist
Der Psychologe half ihm in seiner Krise.	The psychologist helped him through his crisis.

- those ending in **-aph** (or **-af**) or **-oph**

der Paragraf	the paragraph
der Philosoph	the philosopher
Der Paragraf umfasste 350 Wörter.	The paragraph was 350 words long.

- those ending in **-ant**

der Elefant	the elephant
der Diamant	the diamond
Der Diamant war sehr viel Geld wert.	The diamond was worth a lot of money.

- those ending in **-t** referring to men

der Astronaut	the astronaut
der Komponist	the composer
der Architekt	the architect

Um Astronaut zu werden, muss man jahrelang trainieren.	You have to train for years to become an astronaut.

- some other common masculine nouns

der Chirurg	surgeon
der Franzose	Frenchman
der Kollege	colleague
der Mensch	human being
der Ochse	ox
der Spatz	sparrow

Der junge Franzose wollte Schottland besuchen.	The young French guy wanted to visit Scotland.
Ich habe den Franzosen seit einer Woche nicht mehr gesehen.	I haven't seen the French guy for a week.

Grammar Extra!

The noun **der Name** follows the same pattern as **der Junge**, except in the genitive singular, where it adds **-ns** instead of just **-n**. **Der Buchstabe** (meaning *letter* (*of the alphabet*)), **der Funke** (meaning *spark*) and **der Gedanke** (meaning *thought*) also follow this pattern.

Case	**Singular**	**Plural**
Nominative	**der Name**	**die Namen**
Accusative	**den Namen**	**die Namen**
Genitive	**des Namens**	**der Namen**
Dative	**dem Namen**	**den Namen**

Das hängt von der Wichtigkeit des Namens ab.	That depends on how important the name is.

Proper nouns

What is a proper noun?
A **proper noun** is the name of a person, place, organization or thing. Proper nouns are always written with a capital letter, for example, *Kevin, Glasgow, Europe, London Eye*.

➤ In German, names of people and places only change in the genitive singular when they add **-s**, unless they are preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative adjective (in English, *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*).

Annas Buch	Anna's book
Klaras Mantel	Klara's coat
die Werke Goethes	Goethe's works
BUT	
der Untergang der Titanic	the sinking of the Titanic

➪ *For more information on **Articles** and demonstrative adjectives, see pages 25 and 31.*

Grammar Extra!

Where proper names end in **-s**, **-sch**, **-ss**, **-ß**, **-x**, **-z**, or **-tz**, adding an extra **-s** for the genitive makes them very difficult to pronounce. This is best avoided by using **von** + the dative case.

das Buch von Hans	Hans's book
die Werke von Marx	the works of Marx
die Freundin von Klaus	Klaus's girlfriend

➤ **Herr** (meaning *Mr*) is always declined when it is part of a proper name.

an Herrn Schmidt	to Mr Schmidt
Sehr geehrte Herren	Dear Sirs

➤ Surnames usually form their plurals by adding **-s**, unless they

end in **-s**, **-sch**, **-ss**, **-ß**, **-x**, **-z**, or **-tz**, in which case they add **-ens**. They are often preceded by the definite article.

Die Schmidts haben uns zum Abendessen eingeladen.	The Schmidts have invited us to dinner.
Die Schultzens waren nicht zu Hause.	The Schultzes weren't at home.

➪ *For more information on **Articles**, see page 25.*

ARTICLES

What is an article?
In English, an **article** is one of the words *the*, *a* and *an* which is used in front of a noun.

1 Different types of articles

➤ There are two types of article.

- the definite article: *the* in English. This is used to identify a particular thing or person.

I'm going to the supermarket.
That's the woman I was talking to.

- the indefinite article: *a* or *an* in English, *some* or *any* (or no word at all) in the plural. This is used to refer to something unspecific, or something that you do not really know about.

Is there a supermarket near here?
I need a day off.

2 The definite article

➤ In English the definite article *the* always keeps the same form.

the book
the books
with *the* books

➤ In German, however, the definite article has many forms. All German nouns are either masculine, feminine or neuter and, just as in English, they can be either singular or plural. The word you choose for *the* depends on whether the noun it is used with is masculine, feminine or neuter, singular or plural AND it also depends on the case of the noun. This may sound complicated, but it is not too difficult.

Die Frau ging spazieren.	The woman went for a walk.
Der Mann ist geschieden.	The man is divorced.
Sie fährt mit dem Auto in die Stadt.	She travels into town by car.
Die Farbe der Jacke gefällt mir nicht.	I don't like the colour of the jacket.
Ich muss die Kinder abholen.	I have to pick up the children.
Das will ich mit den Behörden besprechen.	I want to discuss that with the authorities.

*For more information on **Nouns**, see page 1.*

➤ The definite article changes for masculine, feminine and neuter singular nouns.

	Definite Article + Singular Noun	**Meaning**
Masculine	**der Mann**	the man
Feminine	**die Frau**	the woman
Neuter	**das Mädchen**	the girl

➤ The plural forms of the definite article are the same for all genders.

	Definite Article + Plural Noun	**Meaning**
Masculine	**die Männer**	the men
Feminine	**die Frauen**	the women
Neuter	**die Mädchen**	the girls

Tip

It is a good idea to learn the article or the gender with the noun when you come across a word for the first time, so that you know whether it is masculine, feminine or neuter. A good dictionary will also give you this information.

➤ The definite article also changes according to the case of the noun in the sentence – nominative, accusative, genitive or dative.

*For more information on **Cases**, see page 9.*

➤ The forms of the definite article in each case are as follows:

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	**der**	**die**	**das**	**die**
Accusative	**den**	**die**	**das**	**die**
Genitive	**des**	**der**	**des**	**der**
Dative	**dem**	**der**	**dem**	**den**

Der Mann ging ins Haus.	The man went into the house.
Die Frau geht jeden Abend schwimmen.	The woman goes swimming every night.
Sie wollen das Mädchen adoptieren.	They want to adopt the girl.
Die zwei Frauen nebenan wollen ihr Haus renovieren.	The two women next door want to renovate their house.
Der Mann mit der reichen Frau.	The man with the rich wife.
Die Mädchen gehen morgen ins Kino.	The girls are going to the cinema tomorrow.
Ich will nicht nur mit den Männern arbeiten.	I don't just want to work with the men.

Key points

✔ The definite article changes for masculine, feminine and neuter singular nouns.

✔ The plural forms of the definite article are the same for all genders.

✔ The form of the definite article also changes depending on the case of the noun in the sentence.

3 Using the definite article

➤ The definite article in German (**der**, **die** or **das**) is used in more or less the same way as we use *the* in English, but it is also used in German in a few places where you might not expect it.

➤ The definite article is used with words like *prices*, *life* and *time* that describe qualities, ideas or experiences (called abstract

nouns) rather than something that you can touch with your hand. Usually, *the* is missed out in English with this type of word.

Die Preise sind wirklich hoch.	Prices are really high.
Das Leben ist schön.	Life is wonderful.
Die Zeit vergeht schnell.	Time passes quickly.

Note that these nouns are sometimes used WITHOUT the article.

Es braucht Mut.	It needs (some) courage.
Gibt es dort Leben?	Is there (any) life there?

➤ You also use the definite article with the genitive case to show that something belongs to someone.

die Jacke der Frau	the woman's jacket

Note that you do not usually use the definite article with the genitive case if the noun is a proper name or is being used as a proper name.
A proper name is the name of a person, place, organization or thing.

Jans Auto	Jan's car
Muttis Auto	Mummy's car

Occasionally, the definite article IS used with proper names:

- to make the sex of the person or the case clearer

Er hat es dem Kekilli gegeben.	He gave it to Kekilli.

- where an adjective is used before the proper name

Die alte Frau Schnorr ist gestorben.	Old Frau Schnorr has died.

- in certain informal situations or to emphasize something

Ich habe heute den Kevin gesehen.	I saw Kevin today.

➤ In German, you have to use the definite article in front of masculine and feminine countries and districts, but you don't

need it for neuter ones.

Die Schweiz ist auch schön.	Switzerland is also beautiful.
Deutschland ist sehr schön.	Germany is very beautiful.

Grammar Extra!

You also use the definite article when geographical names are preceded by an adjective.

das heutige Deutschland	today's Germany

➤ The definite article is used with names of seasons.

Der Winter kommt bald.	Soon it will be winter.

➤ You often use the definite article with meals.

Im Hotel wird das Abendessen ab acht Uhr serviert.	Dinner is served from eight o'clock in the hotel.

Note that there are certain expressions with meals when you don't use the definite article.

Um acht Uhr ist Frühstück.	Breakfast is at eight o'clock.

➤ You also use the definite article with the names of roads.

Sie wohnt jetzt in der Geisener Straße.	She lives in Geisener Road now.

➤ The definite article is used with months of the year, except after the prepositions **seit**, **nach** and **vor**.

Der Dezember war ziemlich kalt.	The December was quite cold.
Wir sind seit September hier.	We have been here since September.

*For more information on **Prepositions**, see page 153.*

➤ If you're talking about prices and want to say *each*, *per* or *a*,

you use the definite article.

Die kosten fünf Euro das Pfund.	They cost five euros a pound.
Ich habe sechs Euro das Stück bezahlt.	I paid six euros each.

➤ In certain common expressions the definite article is used.

in die Stadt fahren	to go into town
mit der Post	by post
mit dem Zug/Bus/Auto	by train/bus/car

Grammar Extra!

In German, the definite article can be used instead of a demonstrative adjective.

Du willst das Buch lesen!	You want to read that book!

➪ *For more information on demonstrative adjectives, see page 31.*

➤ In German, the definite article is left out in certain set expressions.

von Beruf	by profession
Nachrichten hören	to listen to the news

4 Shortened forms of the definite article

➤ After certain prepositions, the definite article can be shortened, though it is best to avoid using some of these forms in writing.

•	**für das → fürs**	
	Es ist fürs Baby.	It's for the baby.
•	**vor dem → vorm**	
	Es liegt vorm Haus.	It's lying in front of the house.
•	**um das → ums**	
	Es geht ums Geld.	It's a question of money.

➤ The following shortened forms can be used in writing.

- **an dem → am**

Am 1. Mai fahren wir in die Ferien.	We go on holiday on the 1st of May.

- **in dem → im**

Das Buch liegt im Haus.	The book's in the house.

- **zu dem → zum**

Ich muss zum Bahnhof gehen.	I have to go to the station.

- **zu der → zur**

Sie geht jeden Tag zur Schule.	She goes to school every day.

➪ *For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

Key points

✔ The definite article is used in German with:

- abstract nouns
- the genitive case to show possession
- proper names, in certain exceptional cases
- masculine and feminine countries and districts
- names of seasons and with months of the year, except after the prepositions **seit**, **nach** and **vor**
- names of roads
- meals and prices
- certain set expressions

✔ When combined with certain prepositions, the definite article can be shortened.

5 Words declined like the definite article

➤ These words follow the same patterns as the definite article:

	Nominative	Accusative	Genitive	Dative
Plural only	**alle**	**alle**	**aller**	**allen**
Singular	**beides**	**beides**	**beides**	**beiden**
Plural	**beide**	**beide**	**beider**	**beiden**
Singular	**dieser,** **diese,** **dieses**	**diesen,** **diese,** **dieses**	**dieses/** **diesen,** **dieser,** **dieses/diesen**	**diesem,** **dieser,** **diesem**
Plural	**diese**	**diese**	**dieser**	**diesen**
Singular	**einiger,** **einige,** **einiges**	**einigen,** **einige,** **einiges**	**einiges/** **einigen,** **einiger,** **einiges/** **einigen**	**einigem,** **einiger,** **einigem**
Plural	**einige**	**einige**	**einiger**	**einigen**
Singular	**jeder,** **jede,** **jedes**	**jeden,** **jede,** **jedes**	**jedes/jeden,** **jeder,** **jedes/jeden**	**jedem,** **jeder,** **jedem**
Plural	**jede**	**jede**	**jeder**	**jeden**
Singular	**jener,** **jene,** **jenes**	**jenen,** **jene,** **jenes**	**jenes/jenen,** **jener,** **jenes/jenen**	**jenem,** **jener,** **jenem**
Plural	**jene**	**jene**	**jener**	**jenen**
Singular	**mancher,** **manche,** **manches**	**manchen,** **manche,** **manches**	**manches/** **manchen,** **mancher,** **manches/** **manchen**	**manchem,** **mancher,** **manchem**
Plural	**manche**	**manche**	**mancher**	**manchen**
Singular	**solcher,** **solche,** **solches**	**solchen,** **solche,** **solches**	**solches/** **solchen,** **solcher,** **solches/** **solchen**	**solchem,** **solcher,** **solchem**
Plural	**solche**	**solche**	**solcher**	**solchen**
Singular	**welcher,** **welche,** **welches**	**welchen,** **welche,** **welches**	**welches/** **welchen,** **welcher,** **welches/** **welchen**	**welchem,** **welcher,** **welchem**
Plural	**welche**	**welche**	**welcher**	**welchen**

Note that **dieser** or **jener** are used to translate the English demonstrative adjectives *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*.

- **alle, aller, allen** (*plural* all, all of them only)
  Wir haben alle We saw all of them.

gesehen.	
Die Eltern fuhren mit allen Kindern weg.	The parents went off with all their children.
• **beide** (*plural* only)	both
Ich habe beide Bücher gelesen.	I've read both books.
• **dieser, diese, dieses**	this, this one, these
Dieser junge Mann ist begabt.	This young man is talented.
Dieses alte Haus ist wirklich schön.	This old house is really beautiful.
• **einiger, einige, einiges**	some, a few, a little
Einige von uns gingen spazieren.	Some of us went for a walk.
Wir haben einiges gesehen.	We saw quite a lot of things.
• **jeder, jede, jedes**	each, each one, every
Jeder Schüler bekommt ein Zeugnis.	Every pupil receives a report.
Sie kommt jedes Mal zu spät.	She arrives late every time.
• **jener, jene, jenes**	that, that one, those
Jener Junge hatte seine Brieftasche verloren.	That boy had lost his wallet.
• **mancher, manche, manches**	many a, some
Mancher Mann bleibt gern mit den Kindern zu Hause.	Some men like staying at home with the children.
Manches Auto fährt schneller als 220 km/h.	Some cars can go faster than 220 km/h.
• **solcher, solche, solches**	such, such a
Ein solches Mountainbike hätte ich auch gern.	I'd really like to have a mountain bike like that too.
• **welcher, welche, welches**	which, which one
Welche Frau hat die Stelle bekommen?	Which woman got the job?

Grammar Extra!

sämtliche and **irgendwelcher** also follow the same pattern as the definite article:

•	**sämtliche**	all, entire (*usually plural*)
	Sie besitzt Tolkiens sämtliche Werke.	She owns the complete works of Tolkien.
•	**irgendwelcher, -e, -es**	some or other
	Sind noch irgendwelche Reste da?	Are there any leftovers?

➤ The words listed above can be used as:

- articles

Dieser Mann kommt aus Südamerika.	This man comes from South America.
Sie geht jeden Tag ins Büro.	She goes to the office every day.

- pronouns – a pronoun is a word you use instead of a noun, when you do not need or want to name someone or something directly, for example, *it, you, none*.

Willst du diesen?	Do you want this one?
Man kann ja nicht alles wissen.	You can't know everything.
Es gibt manche, die keinen Alkohol mögen.	There are some people who don't like alcohol.

➪ *For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 69.*

Grammar Extra!

einiger and **irgendwelcher** end in **-en** in the genitive before masculine or neuter nouns ending in **-s**.

Er musste wegziehen wegen irgendwelchen Geredes.	He had to move away because of some gossip.

jeder, **welcher**, **mancher** and **solcher** can also do this or can have the usual **-es** ending.

Das Kind solcher Eltern wird Probleme haben.	The child of such parents will have problems.
Trotz jeden Versuchs scheiterten die Verhandlungen.	Despite all attempts, the negotiations failed.

➤ **solcher**, **beide** and **sämtliche** can be used after another article or possessive adjective (in English, one of the words *my, your, his, her, its, our* or *their*).

Ein solches Rad habe ich früher auch gehabt.	I used to have a bike like that too.
Diese beiden Männer haben es gesehen.	Both of these men have seen it.

➤ Although **beide** generally has plural forms only, there is one singular form, **beides**. While **beide** is more common and can refer to both people and things, **beides** refers only to things. **Beide** is used for two examples of the same thing or person, while **beides** is used for two different examples.

Es gab zwei Bleistifte und er hat beide genommen.	There were two pencils and he took both.
BUT	
Es gab einen Bleistift und ein Bild und er hat beides genommen.	There was one pencil and one picture and he took both.

☑ Note that **beides** is singular in German, whereas *both* is plural in English.

Beides ist richtig.	Both are correct.

➤ **dies** often replaces the nominative and accusative **dieses** and **diese** when it is used as a pronoun.

Hast du dies schon gelesen?	Have you already read this?
Dies sind meine neuen Sachen.	These are my new things.

➪ *For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 69.*

➤ **alle** also has a fixed form, **all**, which is used together with other articles or possessive pronouns.

All sein Mut war verschwunden.	All his courage had disappeared.

Was machst du mit all diesem Geld?	What are you doing with all this money?

➤ **ganz** can be used to replace both **alle** and **all** and is declined like an adjective.

Sie ist mit dem ganzen Geld verschwunden.	She disappeared with all the money.

➪ *For more information on **Adjectives**, see page 40.*

➤ **ganz** must be used:

- in time phrases

Es hat den ganzen Tag geschneit.	It snowed all day.

- when talking about geography

Im ganzen Land gab es keinen besseren Wein.	There wasn't a better wine in the whole country.

- with nouns referring to a collection of people or animals (*collective* nouns)

Die ganze Gesellschaft war auf der Versammlung vertreten.	The entire company was represented at the meeting.

Grammar Extra!

derjenige/diejenige/dasjenige (*the one, those*) is declined in the same way as the definite article **der** + a weak adjective.

➪ *For more information on **Weak adjectives**, see page 42.*

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	derjenige Mann	diejenige Frau	dasjenige Kind
Accusative	denjenigen Mann	diejenige Frau	dasjenige Kind
Genitive	desjenigen Mann(e)s	derjenigen Frau	desjenigen Kind(e)s
Dative	demjenigen Mann	derjenigen Frau	demjenigen Kind

derselbe/dieselbe/dasselbe *(the same, the same one)* is declined in the same way as **derjenige**. However, after prepositions, the shortened forms of the definite article are used for the appropriate parts of **derselbe**.

zur selben (=zu derselben) Zeit	at the same time
im selben (=in demselben) Zimmer	in the same room

➪ *For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

Key points

- ✔ There is a group of words which are declined like the definite article **der**.
- ✔ These words can be used as articles or pronouns.
- ✔ **solcher**, **beide** and **sämtliche** can be used after another article or possessive adjective.
- ✔ **beide** generally has plural forms only, but there is one singular form, **beides**.
- ✔ When it is used as a pronoun **dies** often replaces the nominative and accusative **dieses** and **diese**.
- ✔ **alle** also has a fixed form, **all**.
- ✔ **ganz** must be used instead of **alle** in certain situations.

6 The indefinite article

➤ In English we have the indefinite article *a*, which changes to *an* in front of a word that starts with a vowel. In the plural we say either *some*, *any* or nothing at all.

➤ In German the word you choose for *a* depends on whether the noun it is used with is masculine, feminine or neuter, singular or plural AND it also depends on the case of the noun.

Da ist ein Auto.	There's a car.
Sie hat eine Wohnung.	She has a flat.
Er gab es einem Kind.	He gave it to a child.

➤ It has no plural forms.

Computer sind in letzter Zeit teurer geworden.	Computers have become more expensive recently.

➤ The indefinite article is formed as follows.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	**ein**	**eine**	**ein**
Accusative	**einen**	**eine**	**ein**
Genitive	**eines**	**einer**	**eines**
Dative	**einem**	**einer**	**einem**

7 Using the indefinite article

➤ The indefinite article is used very much as in English.

Da ist ein Bus.	There's a bus.
Sie hat eine neue Jacke.	She has a new jacket.
Sie gab es einer alten Dame.	She gave it to an old lady.

➤ In certain situations, you do not use the indefinite article:

- when talking about the job someone does

Sie ist Ärztin.	She's a doctor.

- when talking about someone's nationality or religion

Sie ist Deutsche.	She's (a) German.
Er ist Moslem.	He's (a) Muslim.

Note that the indefinite article IS used when an adjective

comes before the noun.

Sie ist eine sehr begabte Journalistin.	She's a very talented journalist.

- in certain fixed expressions

Es ist Geschmacksache.	It's a question of taste.
Tatsache ist …	It's a fact …

- after **als** (meaning *as a*)

Als Lehrerin verdiene ich nicht gut.	I don't earn very much as a teacher.
Als Großmutter darf ich meine Enkel verwöhnen.	As a grandmother, I'm allowed to spoil my grandchildren.

8 The indefinite article in negative sentences

➤ In English we use words like *not* and *never* to indicate that something is not happening or is not true. The sentences that these words are used in are called negative sentences.

I don't know him.
I never do my homework on time.

➤ In German, you use a separate negative form of the indefinite article, which is formed exactly like **ein** in the singular, and also has plural forms. It means *no/ not a/not one/not any*.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	**kein**	**keine**	**kein**	**keine**
Accusative	**keinen**	**keine**	**kein**	**keine**
Genitive	**keines**	**keiner**	**keines**	**keiner**
Dative	**keinem**	**keiner**	**keinem**	**keinen**

Er hatte keine Geschwister.	He had no brothers or sisters.
Ich sehe keinen Unterschied.	I don't see any difference.
Das ist keine richtige Antwort.	That's not a correct answer.
Kein Mensch hat es gesehen.	Not one person has seen it.

Tip

This negative form of the indefinite article is even used when the *positive* form of the phrase has no article.

Er hatte Angst davor.	He was afraid of it.
Er hatte keine Angst davor.	He wasn't afraid of it.

Grammar Extra!

The negative form of the indefinite article is also used in many informal expressions.

Sie hatte kein Geld mehr.	All her money was gone.
Es waren keine drei Monate vergangen, als …	It was less than three months later that …
Es hat mich keine zehn Euro gekostet.	It cost me less than ten euros.

If you want to emphasize the **ein** in the sentence, **nicht ein** can be used instead of **kein**.

Nicht ein Kind hat es singen können.	Not *one* child could sing it.

➪ *For more information on **Negatives**, see page 179.*

Key points

✔ The indefinite article is used in German:

- to translate the English *a* and *any* in the singular
- in negative sentences in its separate negative form, **kein**, to translate *no*

✔ The indefinite article in German is NOT used when:

- talking about someone's job, nationality or religion, unless an adjective is used before the noun
- in certain set expressions or after **als** meaning *as a*

8 Words declined like the indefinite article

➤ The following words are possessive adjectives, one of the words *my, your, his, her, its*, *our* or *their* used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another. They follow the same pattern as the indefinite articles **ein** and **kein**.

mein	my
dein	your (*singular familiar*)
sein	his/its
ihr	her/its
unser	our
euer	your (*plural familiar*)
ihr	their
Ihr	your (*polite singular and plural*)

➤ Possessive adjectives are formed in the following way.

	Nominative	Accusative	Genitive	Dative
Singular	**mein,**	**meinen,**	**meines,**	**meinem,**
	meine,	**meine,**	**meiner,**	**meiner,**
	mein	**mein**	**meines**	**meinem**
Plural	**meine**	**meine**	**meiner**	**meinen**
Singular	**dein,**	**deinen,**	**deines,**	**deinem,**
	deine,	**deine,**	**deiner,**	**deiner,**
	dein	**dein**	**deines**	**deinem**
Plural	**deine**	**deine**	**deiner**	**deinen**
Singular	**sein,**	**seinen,**	**seines,**	**seinem,**
	seine,	**seine,**	**seiner,**	**seiner,**
	sein	**sein**	**seines**	**seinem**
Plural	**seine**	**seine**	**seiner**	**seinen**
Singular	**ihr,**	**ihren,**	**ihres,**	**ihrem,**
	ihre,	**ihre,**	**ihrer,**	**ihrer,**
	ihr	**ihr**	**ihres**	**ihrem**
Plural	**ihre**	**ihre**	**ihrer**	**ihren**
Singular	**unser,**	**unseren,**	**unseres,**	**unserem,**
	unsere,	**unsere,**	**unserer,**	**unserer,**
	unser	**unser**	**unseres**	**unserem**

Plural	**unsere**	**unsere**	**unserer**	**unseren**
Singular	**euer,**	**eu(e)ren,**	**eu(e)res,**	**eu(e)rem,**
	eu(e)re,	**eu(e)re,**	**eu(e)rer,**	**eu(e)rer,**
	eu(e)res	**eu(e)res**	**eu(e)res**	**eu(e)rem**
Plural	**eu(e)re**	**eu(e)re**	**eu(e)rer**	**eu(e)ren**
Singular	**ihr,**	**ihren,**	**ihres,**	**ihrem,**
	ihre,	**ihre,**	**ihrer,**	**ihrer,**
	ihr	**ihr**	**ihres**	**ihrem**
Plural	**ihre**	**ihre**	**ihrer**	**ihren**

Mein kleiner Bruder will auch mitkommen.	My little brother wants to come too.
Wo steht dein altes Auto?	Where is your old car?
Er spielt Fußball mit seiner Tante.	He is playing football with his aunt.
Was ist mit ihrem Computer los?	What is wrong with her computer?
Ihre Kinder sind wirklich verwöhnt.	Their children are really spoiled.
Wie geht es Ihrer Schwester?	How is your sister?
Ich will meine Kinder regelmäßig sehen.	I want to see my children regularly.

Grammar Extra!

Possessive adjectives are often followed by other adjectives in German sentences. These adjectives then have the same endings as the indefinite article.

Er liebt sein altes Auto.	He loves his old car.
Sie hat ihren neuen Computer verkauft.	She sold her new computer.
Wo ist deine rote Jacke?	Where is your red jacket?

irgendein (meaning *some … or other*) and its plural form **irgendwelche** also take these endings.

Er ist irgendein bekannter Schauspieler.	He's some famous actor or other.
Sie ist nur irgendeine alte Frau.	She's just some old woman or other.
Sie hat irgendein neues Buch gekauft.	She bought some new book or other.
Ich muss irgendwelche blöden Touristen herumführen.	I have to show some stupid tourists or other round.

Key points

✔ Possessive adjectives, one of the words *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our* or *their*, are declined like the indefinite articles **ein** and **kein**.

ADJECTIVES

What is an adjective?
An **adjective** is a 'describing' word that tells you more about a person or thing, such as their appearance, colour, size or other qualities, for example, *pretty*, *blue*, *big*.

Using adjectives

➤ Adjectives are words like *clever*, *expensive* and *silly* that tell you more about a noun (a living being, thing or idea). They can also tell you more about a pronoun, such as *he* or *they*. Adjectives are sometimes called 'describing words'. They can be used right next to a noun they are describing, or can be separated from the noun by a verb like *be*, *look*, *feel* and so on.

a clever girl
an expensive coat
a silly idea
He's just being silly.

➪ *For more information on* ***Nouns*** *and* ***Pronouns****, see pages 1 and 69.*

➤ In English, the only time an adjective changes its form is when you are making a comparison.

She's cleverer than her brother.
That's the silliest idea I ever heard!

➤ In German, however, adjectives usually agree with what they are describing. This means that their endings change depending on whether the person or thing you are referring to is masculine, feminine or neuter, and singular or plural. It also depends on the case of the person or thing you are describing and whether it is preceded by the definite or indefinite article.

Das neue Buch ist da.	The new book has arrived.
Ich wollte es der alten Frau geben.	I wanted to give it to the old woman.
Sie erzählte mir eine langweilige Geschichte.	She told me a boring story.
Die deutschen Traditionen	German traditions

➪ *For more information on* ***Cases*** *and* ***Articles****, see pages 9 and 25.*

➤ As in English, German adjectives come BEFORE the noun they describe, but AFTER the verb in the sentence. The only time the adjective does not agree with the word it describes is when it comes AFTER the verb.

eine schwarze Katze	a black cat
Das Buch ist neu.	The book is new.

Key points

- ✔ Most German adjectives change their form according to the case of the noun they are describing and whether the noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, singular or plural.
- ✔ In German, the only time the adjective does not agree with the word it describes is when it comes AFTER the verb.

Making adjectives agree

1 The basic rules

➤ In dictionaries, only the basic form of German adjectives is shown. You need to know how to change it to make it agree with the noun or pronoun the adjective describes.

➤ To make an adjective agree with the noun or pronoun it describes, you simply add one of three sets of different endings:

2 The Weak Declension

➤ The endings used after the definite articles **der**, **die** and **das** and other words declined like them are shown below.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	-e	-e	-e	-en
Accusative	-en	-e	-e	-en
Genitive	-en	-en	-en	-en
Dative	-en	-en	-en	-en

➤ The following table shows you how these different endings are added to the adjective **alt**, meaning *old*, when it is used with the definite article.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular
Nominative	der alte Mann	die alte Frau	das alte Haus
Accusative	den alten Mann	die alte Frau	das alte Haus
Genitive	des alten Mann(e)s	der alten Frau	des alten Hauses
Dative	dem alten Mann	der alten Frau	dem alten Haus

Nominative:

Der alte Mann wohnt nebenan.	The old man lives next door.

Accusative:

Ich habe die alte Frau in der Bibliothek gesehen.	I saw the old woman in the library.

Genitive:

Die Besitzerin des alten Hauses ist	The owner of the old house is very

ganz reich.	rich.

Dative:

Er hilft dem alten Mann beim Einkaufen.	He helps the old man to do his shopping.

➤ These are the plural endings of adjectives in the weak declension.

Plural	**All Genders**
Nominative	**die alten Männer/Frauen/Häuser**
Accusative	**die alten Männer/Frauen/Häuser**
Genitive	**der alten Männer/Frauen/Häuser**
Dative	**den alten Männern/Frauen/Häusern**

3 The Mixed Declension

➤ The endings used after **ein**, **kein**, **irgendein** and the possessive adjectives are shown below.

Note that this declension differs from the weak declension only in the three forms underlined below.

Case	**Masculine Singular**	**Feminine Singular**	**Neuter Singular**	**All Genders Plural**
Nominative	**-er**	**-e**	**-es**	**-en**
Accusative	**-en**	**-e**	**-es**	**-en**
Genitive	**-en**	**-en**	**-en**	**-en**
Dative	**-en**	**-en**	**-en**	**-en**

*For more information on the **Possessive adjectives**, see page 37.*

➤ The following table shows you how these different endings are added to the adjective **lang**, meaning *long*.

Case	**Masculine Singular**	**Feminine Singular**	**Neuter Singular**
Nominative	**ein langer Weg**	**eine lange Reise**	**ein langes Spiel**
Accusative	**einen langen Weg**	**eine lange Reise**	**ein langes Spiel**
Genitive	**eines langen Weg(e)s**	**einer langen Reise**	**eines langen Spiel(e)s**

Dative	**einem langen Weg**	**einer langen Reise**	**einem langen Spiel**

Nominative:

Eine lange Reise muss geplant werden.	You have to plan a long trip.

Accusative:

Ich habe einen langen Weg nach Hause.	It takes me a long time to get home.

Genitive:

Die vielen Nachteile einer langen Reise …	The many disadvantages of a long journey …

Dative:

Bei einem langen Spiel kann man sich langweilen.	You can get bored with a long game.

➤ These are the plural endings of adjectives when they have a mixed declension.

Plural	**All Genders**
Nominative	**ihre langen Wege/Reisen/Spiele**
Accusative	**ihre langen Wege/Reisen/Spiele**
Genitive	**ihrer langen Wege/Reisen/Spiele**
Dative	**ihren langen Wegen/Reisen/Spielen**

4 The Strong Declension

➤ The endings used when there is no article before the noun are shown below.

Case	**Masculine Singular**	**Feminine Singular**	**Neuter Singular**	**All Genders Plural**
Nominative	**-er**	**-e**	**-es**	**-e**
Accusative	**-en**	**-e**	**-es**	**-e**
Genitive	**-en**	**-er**	**-en**	**-er**
Dative	**-em**	**-er**	**-em**	**-en**

➤ The following table shows you how these different endings are

added to the adjective **gut**, meaning *good.*

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular
Nominative	guter Käse	gute Marmelade	gutes Bier
Accusative	guten Käse	gute Marmelade	gutes Bier
Genitive	guten Käses	guter Marmelade	guten Bier(e)s
Dative	gutem Käse	guter Marmelade	gutem Bier

Nominative:

Gutes Bier ist sehr wichtig auf einer Party.	Good beer is very important at a party.

Accusative:

Wo finde ich guten Käse?	Where will I get good cheese?

Genitive:

Das ist ein Zeichen guter Marmelade.	That is a sign of good jam.

Dative:

Zu gutem Käse braucht man auch Oliven.	You need olives to go with good cheese.

➤ These are the plural endings of adjectives when they have a strong declension.

Note that the plural form of **Käse** is normally **Käsesorten**.

Plural	All Genders
Nominative	gute Käsesorten/Marmeladen/Biere
Accusative	gute Käsesorten/Marmeladen/Biere
Genitive	guter Käsesorten/Marmeladen/Biere
Dative	guten Käsesorten/Marmeladen/Bieren

Note that these endings allow the adjective to do the work of the missing article by showing the case of the noun and whether it is singular or plural, masculine, feminine or neuter.

➤ The article is omitted more often in German than in English,

especially where you have *preposition* + *adjective* + *noun* combinations.

Nach kurzer Fahrt kamen wir in Glasgow an.	After a short journey we arrived in Glasgow.
Mit gleichem Gehalt wie du würde ich mir einen Urlaub leisten können.	I'd be able to afford a holiday on the same salary as you.

➤ These strong declension endings are also used after any of the following words when the noun they refer to is not preceded by an article.

Word	**Meaning**
ein bisschen	a little, a bit of
ein wenig	a little
ein paar	a few, a couple
weniger	fewer, less
einige (*plural forms only*)	some
etwas	some, any (*singular*)
mehr	more
lauter	nothing but, sheer, pure
solch	such
was für	what, what kind of
viel	much, many, a lot of
welch …!	what …! what a …!
manch	many a
wenig	little, few, not much
zwei, drei *etc*	two, three *etc*

Morgen hätte ich ein wenig freie Zeit für dich.	I could spare you some time tomorrow.
Sie hat mir ein paar gute Tipps gegeben.	She gave me a few good tips.
Er isst weniger frisches Obst als ich.	He eats less fresh fruit than me.
Heutzutage wollen mehr junge Frauen Ingenieurin werden.	Nowadays, more young women want to be engineers.
Solche leckere Schokolade habe ich schon lange nicht mehr gegessen.	I haven't had such good chocolate for a long time.
Wir haben viel kostbare Zeit verschwendet.	We have wasted a lot of valuable time.
Welch herrliches Wetter!	What wonderful weather!

➤ With **wenig** and numbers from **zwei** onwards, adjectives behave as follows:

- Strong, when there is no article:

Es gab damals nur wenig frisches Obst.	There was little fresh fruit at that time.
Zwei kleine Jungen kamen die Straße entlang.	Two small boys came along the street.

- Weak, when the definite article comes first:

Das wenige frische Obst, das es damals gab, war teuer.	The little fresh fruit that was available then, was expensive.
Die zwei kleinen Jungen, die die Straße entlangkamen.	The two small boys who came along the street.

- Mixed, when a possessive adjective comes first:

Meine zwei kleinen Jungen sind manchmal frech.	My two small sons are cheeky sometimes.

➤ These strong declension endings also need to be used after possessives where no other word shows the case of the following noun and whether it's masculine, feminine or neuter, singular or plural.

Sebastians altes Buch lag auf dem Tisch.	Sebastian's old book was lying on the table.
Mutters neuer Computer sieht toll aus.	Mother's new computer looks great.

Tip

When these various endings are added to adjectives, you have to watch out for some spelling changes.

When endings are added to the adjective **hoch**, meaning *high*, the simple form changes to **hoh**.

Das Gebäude ist hoch.	The building is high.
Das ist ein hohes Gebäude.	That is a high building.

Adjectives ending in **-el** lose the **-e** when endings are added.

Das Zimmer ist dunkel.	The room is dark.
Man sieht nichts in dem dunklen Zimmer.	You can't see anything in the dark room.

Adjectives ending in **-er** often lose the **-e** when endings are added.

Das Auto war teuer.	The car was expensive.
Sie kaufte ein teures Auto.	She bought an expensive car.

Key points

✔ To make an adjective agree with the noun it is describing, you simply add one of three sets of endings: weak, mixed or strong.

✔ Strong endings are also used after particular words when not preceded by an article, for example, **ein bisschen**, **ein paar**, **wenig**, and after possessive adjectives.

5 Participles as adjectives

➤ In English, the present participle is a verb form ending in *-ing*, which may be used as an adjective or a noun. In German, you simply add **-d** to the infinitive of the verb to form the present participle, which may then be used as an adjective with all the usual endings.

Auf dem Tisch stand ein Foto von einem lachenden Kind.	There was a photo of a laughing child on the table.

Note that the present participles of **sein** and **haben** cannot be used like this.

➤ The past participle of a verb can also be used as an adjective.

Meine Mutter hat meine verlorenen Sachen gefunden.	My mother found my lost things.

➪ *For more information on **Past participles**, see page 113.*

6 Adjectives preceded by the dative case

➤ With many adjectives you use the dative case, for example:

- ähnlich similar to
  Er ist seinem Vater sehr ähnlich. He's very like his father.
- bekannt familiar to
  Sie kommt mir bekannt vor. She seems familiar to me.
- dankbar grateful to
  Ich bin dir sehr dankbar. I'm very grateful to you.
- fremd strange, alien to
  Das ist mir fremd. That's alien to me.
- gleich all the same to/like
  Es ist mir gleich. It's all the same to me.
- leicht easy for
  Du machst es dir wirklich zu leicht. You really make things too easy for yourself.
- nah(e) close to
  Unser Haus ist nahe der Universität. Our house is near the university.
- peinlich embarrassing for
  Das war ihr aber peinlich. She was really embarrassed.
- unbekannt unknown to
  Das war mir unbekannt. I didn't know that.

Key points

- ✔ In German, both present and past participles can also be used as adjectives.
- ✔ With many German adjectives you use the dative case.

Adjectives used as nouns

➤ All adjectives in German, and participles used as adjectives, can also be used as nouns. These are often called adjectival nouns.

➤ Adjectives and participles used as nouns have:

- a capital letter like other nouns

Der neue Angestellte ist früh angekommen.	The new employee arrived early.

- weak, strong or mixed endings, depending on which article, if any, comes before them

Sie ist die neue Angestellte.	She is the new employee.
Das Gute daran ist, dass ich mehr verdiene.	The good thing about it is that I'm earning more.
Es bleibt beim Alten.	Things remain as they were.

Key points

✔ Adjectives in German, and participles used as adjectives, can also be used as nouns. These are often called adjectival nouns.

✔ Adjectival nouns begin with a capital letter and take the same endings as normal adjectives.

Some other points about adjectives

1 Adjectives describing nationality

➤ These are not spelt with a capital letter in German except in public or official names.

Die deutsche Sprache ist schön.	The German language is beautiful.
Das französische Volk war entsetzt.	The people of France were horrified.
BUT:	
Die Deutsche Bahn hat Erfolg.	The German railways are successful.

➤ However, when these adjectives are used as nouns to refer to a language, a capital letter is used.

Sie sprechen kein Englisch.	They don't speak English.

➤ In German, for expressions like *he is English/he is German etc* a noun or adjectival noun is used instead of an adjective.

Er ist Deutscher.	He is German.
Sie ist Deutsche.	She is German.

2 Adjectives taken from place names

➤ These are formed by adding **-er** to names of towns. They never change by adding endings to show case.

Kölner, Frankfurter, Berliner *etc*	from Cologne, Frankfurt, Berlin *etc*
Der Kölner Dom ist wirklich beeindruckend.	Cologne cathedral is really impressive.
Ich möchte ein Frankfurter Würstchen.	I'd like a frankfurter sausage.

➤ Adjectives from **die Schweiz**, meaning Switzerland, and some other regions can also be formed in this way.

Schweizer Käse mag ich gern.	I really like Swiss cheese.

➤ Adjectives like these can be used as nouns denoting the inhabitants of a town, in which case they take the same endings as normal nouns.

Die Sprache des Kölners heißt	People from Cologne speak Kölsch.

Kölsch.	
Die Entscheidung wurde von den Frankfurtern begrüsst.	People from Frankfurt welcomed the decision.

Note that the feminine form of such nouns is formed by adding **-in** in the singular and **-innen** in the plural.

Christine, die Londonerin war, wollte nach Glasgow ziehen.	Christine, who was from London, wanted to move to Glasgow.

Key points

- ✔ Adjectives describing nationality are not spelt with a capital letter in German except in public or official names, BUT when they are used as nouns to refer to a language, they do have a capital letter.
- ✔ Adjectives taken from place names are formed by adding **-er** to the name of the town and never change by adding endings to show case.
- ✔ They can also be used as nouns denoting the inhabitants of a place.

Comparatives of adjectives

What is a comparative adjective?
A **comparative adjective** in English is one with *-er* added to it or *more* or *less* in front of it, that is used to compare people or things, for example, *slower*, *more beautiful*.

➤ In German, to say that something is *easier, more expensive* and so on, you add **-er** to the simple form of most adjectives.

einfach → einfacher

Das war viel einfacher für dich.	That was much easier for you.

ℹ Note that adjectives whose simple form ends in **-en** or **-er** may drop the final **-e** to form the comparative, as in **teurer**.

teuer → teurer

Diese Jacke ist teurer.	This jacket is more expensive.

➤ To introduce the person or thing you are making the comparison with, use **als** (meaning *than*).

Er ist kleiner als seine Schwester.	He is smaller than his sister.
Diese Frage ist einfacher als die erste.	This question is easier than the first one.

➤ To say that something or someone is *as … as* something or someone else, you use **so … wie** or **genauso … wie**, if you want to make it more emphatic. To say *not as … as*, you use **nicht so … wie**.

Sie ist so gut wie ihr Bruder.	She is as good as her brother.
Er war genauso glücklich wie ich.	He was just as happy as I was.
Sie ist nicht so alt wie du.	She is not as old as you.

➤ Here are some examples of commonly used adjectives which have a vowel change in the comparative form:

Adjective	Meaning	Comparative	Meaning
alt	old	**älter**	older
stark	strong	**stärker**	stronger
schwach	weak	**schwächer**	weaker
scharf	sharp	**schärfer**	sharper
lang	long	**länger**	longer

kurz	short	**kürzer**	shorter
warm	warm	**wärmer**	warmer
kalt	cold	**kälter**	colder
hart	hard	**härter**	harder
groß	big	**größer**	bigger

➤ Adjectives whose simple form ends in **-el** lose the **-e** before adding the comparative ending **-er**.

eitel → eitler	vain → vainer
Er ist eitler als ich.	He is vainer than me.
dunkel → dunkler	dark → darker
Deine Haare sind dunkler als ihre.	Your hair is darker than hers.

➤ When used before the noun, comparative forms of adjectives take the same weak, strong or mixed endings as their simple forms.

Die jüngere Schwester ist größer als die ältere.	The younger sister is bigger than the older one.
Mein jüngerer Bruder geht jetzt zur Schule.	My younger brother goes to school now.

➪ *For more information on **Making adjectives agree**, see pages 42-48.*

Grammar Extra!

➤ With a few adjectives, comparative forms may also be used to translate the idea of *-ish* or *rather*.

Comparative	**Meaning**
älter	elderly
dünner	thinnish
dicker	fattish
größer	largish
jünger	youngish
kleiner	smallish
kürzer	shortish
neuer	newish

Eine ältere Frau kam die Straße entlang.	An elderly woman was coming along the street.

Er war von jüngerem Aussehen.	He was of youngish appearance.

Key points

- ✔ In German, to form the comparative you add **-er** to the simple form of most adjectives.
- ✔ To compare people or things in German, you use **so … wie**, **genauso … wie**, if you want to make it more emphatic, or **nicht so … wie**.
- ✔ *Than* in comparatives corresponds to **als**.
- ✔ There is a change in the vowel in many of the simple forms of German adjectives when forming their comparatives.
- ✔ Adjectives whose simple form ends in **-el**, such as **dunkel**, lose the **-e** before adding the comparative ending **-er**.

Superlatives of adjectives

What is a superlative adjective?

A **superlative adjective** in English is one with *-est* on the end of it or *most* or *least* in front of it, that is used to compare people or things, for example, *thinnest*, *most beautiful*.

➤ In German, to say that something or someone is *easiest, youngest, most expensive* and so on, you add **-st** to the simple form of the adjective. As with comparative forms, the vowel in the simple form can change. Superlative forms are generally used with the definite article and take the same weak endings as their simple forms.

Deine Hausaufgaben waren die einfachsten.	Your homework was easiest.
Sie ist die Jüngste in der Familie.	She is the youngest in the family.
Ich wollte die teuerste Jacke im Laden kaufen.	I wanted to buy the most expensive jacket in the shop.

➤ Adjectives ending in **-t**, **-tz**, **-z**, **-sch**, **-ss** or **-ß** form the superlative by adding **-est** instead of **-st**.

der/die/das schlechteste	the worst
Das war der schlechteste Film seit Jahren.	That was the worst film in years.
der/die/das schmerzhafteste	the most painful
Das war ihre schmerzhafteste Verletzung.	That was her most painful injury.
der/die/das süßeste	the sweetest
Ich möchte den süßesten Nachtisch.	I would like the sweetest dessert.
der/die/das stolzeste	the proudest
Sie war die stolzeste Mutter in der Gegend.	She was the proudest mother in the area.
der/die/das frischeste	the freshest
Für dieses Rezept braucht man das frischeste Obst.	You need the freshest fruit for this recipe.

➤ Adjectives ending in **-eu** and **-au** also add **-est** to form the superlative.

der/die/das neueste	the newest, the latest
Ich brauche die neueste Ausgabe	I need the latest edition of the

des Wörterbuchs.	dictionary.
der/die/das schlaueste	the cleverest
Sie ist die schlaueste Schülerin in der Klasse.	She is the cleverest student in the class.

➤ The English superlative *most,* meaning *very,* can be expressed in German by any of the following words.

Superlative	**Meaning**
äußerst	extremely
sehr	very
besonders	especially
außerordentlich	exceptionally
höchst	extremely (*not used with words of one syllable*)
furchtbar	terribly (*used only in conversation*)
richtig	really/most (*used only in conversation*)

Sie ist ein äußerst begabter Mensch.	She is a most gifted person.
Das Essen war besonders schlecht.	The food was really dreadful.
Der Wein war furchtbar teuer.	The wine was terribly expensive.
Das sieht richtig komisch aus.	That looks really funny.

Tip

Just as English has some irregular comparative and superlative forms – *better* instead of '*more good*', and *worst* instead of '*most bad*' – German also has a few irregular forms.

Adjective	**Meaning**	**Comparative**	**Meaning**	**Superlative**	**Meaning**
gut	good	**besser**	better	**der beste**	the best
hoch	high	**höher**	higher	**der höchste**	the highest
viel	much/a lot	**mehr**	more	**der meiste**	the most
nah	near	**näher**	nearer	**der nächste**	the nearest

Ich habe eine bessere Idee.	I have a better idea.
Wo liegt der nächste Bahnhof?	Where is the nearest station?

Key points

✔ Most German superlatives are formed by adding **-st** to the simple form of the adjective.

✔ Adjectives ending in **-t**, **-tz**, **-z**, **-sch**, **-ss**, **-ß**, **-eu** or **-au** form the superlative by adding **-est** instead of **-st**.

✔ **Gut**, **hoch**, **viel** and **nah** have irregular comparative and superlative forms: **gut/besser/der beste**, **hoch/höher/der höchste**, **viel/mehr/**

ADVERBS

What is an adverb?
An **adverb** is a word usually used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs that gives more information about when, how, where or in what circumstances something happens: *quickly, happily, now* are all adverbs.

How adverbs are used

➤ In general, adverbs are used together with:

- verbs *(act quickly, speak strangely, smile cheerfully)*
- adjectives *(rather ill, a lot better, deeply sorry)*
- other adverbs *(really fast, too quickly, very well)*

➤ Adverbs can also relate to the whole sentence; they often tell you what the speaker is thinking or feeling.

Fortunately, Jan had already left.
Actually, I don't think I'll come.

How adverbs are formed

The basic rules

➤ Many English adverbs end in *-ly*, which is added to the end of the adjective (*quick* → *quickly*; *sad* → *sadly*; *frequent* → *frequently*).

➤ In contrast, most German adverbs used to comment on verbs are simply adjectives used as adverbs. And the good news is that unlike adjectives, they do not change by adding different endings.

Habe ich das richtig gehört?	Did I hear that correctly?
Er war schick angezogen.	He was stylishly dressed.

➤ A small number of German adverbs which do not directly comment on the verb are formed by adding **-weise** or **-sweise** to a noun.

Noun	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
das Beispiel	example	**beispielsweise**	for example
die Beziehung	relation, connection	**beziehungsweise**	or/or rather/ that is to say
der Schritt	step	**schrittweise**	step by step
die Zeit	time	**zeitweise**	at times
der Zwang	compulsion	**zwangsweise**	compulsorily

Grammar Extra!

Some German adverbs are also formed by adding **-erweise** to an uninflected adjective. These adverbs are mainly used by the person speaking to express an opinion.

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
erstaunlich	astonishing	**erstaunlicherweise**	astonishingly enough
glücklich	happy, fortunate	**glücklicherweise**	fortunately
komisch	strange, funny	**komischerweise**	strangely enough

➤ There is another important group of adverbs which are NOT

formed from adjectives or nouns, for example, words like **unten**, **oben** and **leider**.

Das beste Buch lag unten auf dem Stapel.	The best book was at the bottom of the pile.
Die Schlafzimmer sind oben.	The bedrooms are upstairs.
Ich kann leider nicht kommen.	Unfortunately I can't come.

➤ Adverbs of time fit into this category and the following are some common ones.

Adverb of time	**Meaning**
endlich	finally
heute	today
immer	always
morgen	tomorrow
morgens	in the mornings
sofort	at once

Sie kann erst morgen kommen.	She can't come till tomorrow.
Priska hat immer Hunger.	Priska is always hungry.
Ja, ich mache das sofort.	Yes, I'll do it at once.

➤ Adverbs often express the idea of 'to what extent', for example, words in English like *extremely* and *especially*. These are sometimes called adverbs of degree. Some common adverbs of this type in German are:

Adverb of degree	**Meaning**
äußerst	extremely
besonders	especially
beträchtlich	considerably
fast	almost
kaum	hardly, scarcely
ziemlich	fairly

Es hat mir nicht besonders gefallen.	I didn't particularly like it.
Ich bin fast fertig.	I'm almost finished.
Er war ziemlich sauer.	He was quite angry.

Adverbs of place

➤ Adverbs of place are words such as *where?, there, up, nowhere.* German adverbs of place behave very differently from their English counterparts.

- where there is no movement involved and the adverb is simply referring to a location, you use the form of the adverb you find in the dictionary.

Wo ist sie?	Where is she?
Sie sind nicht da.	They're not there.
Hier darf man nicht parken.	You can't park here.

- to show some movement AWAY from the person speaking, you use the adverb **hin**.

Oliver und Andrea geben heute eine Party. Gehen wir hin?	Oliver and Andrea are having a party today. Shall we go?

In German, **hin** is often added to another adverb to create what are called compound adverbs, which show there is some movement involved. In English, we would just use adverbs in this case.

Compound adverb	**Meaning**
dahin	(to) there
dorthin	there
hierhin	here
irgendwohin	(to) somewhere or other
überallhin	everywhere
wohin?	where (to)?

Wohin fährst du?	Where are you going?
Sie liefen überallhin.	They ran everywhere.

- To show some movement TOWARDS the person speaking, you use the adverb **her**. As with **hin**, this is often added to another adverb.

Compound adverb	**Meaning**
daher	from there
hierher	here
irgendwoher	from somewhere or other
überallher	from all over

woher?	where from?
Woher kommst du?	Where do you come from?
Woher hast du das?	Where did you get that from?
Das habe ich irgendwoher gekriegt.	I got that from somewhere or other.

Key points

- ✔ Many German adverbs are simply adjectives used as adverbs, but they are not declined, unlike adjectives.
- ✔ In German, some adverbs are formed by adding **-weise** or **-sweise** to a noun.
- ✔ Compound adverbs formed by adding **hin** or **her** are often used to show movement away from or towards the person speaking (or writing).

Comparatives and superlatives of adverbs

1 Comparative adverbs

What is a comparative adverb?
A **comparative adverb** is one which, in English, has *-er* on the end of it or *more* or *less* in front of it, for example, *earlier, later, sooner, more/less frequently*.

➤ Adverbs can be used to make comparisons in German, just as they can in English. The comparative of adverbs is formed in exactly the same way as that of adjectives, that is by adding **-er** to the basic form. **Als** is used for *than*.

Sie läuft schneller als ihr Bruder.	She runs faster than her brother.
Ich sehe ihn seltener als früher.	I see him less often than before.

➤ To make *as … as* or *not as … as* comparisons with adverbs, you use the same phrases as with adjectives.

- **so … wie** as … as
  Er läuft so schnell wie sein Bruder. He runs as fast as his brother.
- **nicht so … wie** not as … as
  Sie kann nicht so gut schwimmen wie du. She can't swim as well as you.

➤ The idea of *more and more …* is expressed in German by using **immer** and the comparative form.

Die Männer sprachen immer lauter.	The men were talking louder and louder.

➤ *the more … the more …* is expressed in German by **je … desto …** or **je … umso …**

Je eher, desto besser.	The sooner the better.
Je schneller sie fährt, umso mehr Angst habe ich!	The faster she drives, the more frightened I am!

➪ *For more information on **Comparatives of adjectives**, see page 53.*

2 Superlative adverbs

What is a superlative adverb?
A **superlative adverb** is one which, in English, has *-est* on the end of it or *most* or *least* in front of it, for example, *soonest*, *fastest*, *most/least frequently*.

➤ The superlative of adverbs in German is formed in the following way and, unlike adjectives, is not declined:

am + *adverb* + **-sten**	
Wer von ihnen arbeitet am schnellsten?	Which of them works fastest?
Er hat es am langsamsten gemacht.	He did it slowest.

➤ Adverbs ending in **-d**, **-t**, **-tz**, **-z**, **-sch**, **-ss**, or **-ß** form the superlative by adding **-esten**. This makes pronunciation easier.

Das Erdbeereis war bei den Kindern am beliebtesten.	The strawberry ice cream was the most popular one with the kids.
Am heißesten war es in Südspanien.	It was hottest in southern Spain.

➪ *For more information on **Superlatives of adjectives**, see page 55.*

ⓘ Note that some superlative adverbs are used to show the extent of a quality rather than a comparison. The following adverbs are used in this way:

Adverb	**Meaning**
bestens	very well
höchstens	at the most/at best
meistens	mostly/most often
spätestens	at the latest
wenigstens	at least

Die Geschäfte gehen bestens.	Business is going very well.
Er kommt meistens zu spät an.	He usually arrives late.
Wenigstens bekomme ich mehr Geld dafür.	At least I'm getting more money for it.

3 Adverbs with irregular comparatives and superlatives

➤ A few German adverbs have irregular comparative and

superlative forms.

Adverb	Meaning	Comparative	Meaning	Superlative	Meaning
gern	well	**lieber**	better	**am liebsten**	best
bald	soon	**eher**	sooner	**am ehesten**	soonest
viel	much, a lot	**mehr**	more	**am meisten**	most

Am liebsten lese ich Kriminalromane.	I like detective stories best.
Sie hat am meisten gewonnen.	She won the most.

Key points

- ✔ Comparatives of adverbs are formed in the same way as comparatives of adjectives, adding **-er** to the basic form.
- ✔ To compare people or things, you use **so … wie**, **ebenso … wie** or **nicht so … wie**.
- ✔ *Than* in comparatives of adverbs corresponds to **als**.
- ✔ Superlatives of adverbs are formed by using the formula **am** + *adverb* + **-sten/-esten**.
- ✔ Unlike adjectives, adverbs do not change their form to agree with the verb, adjective or other adverb they relate to.

Word order with adverbs

➤ In English, adverbs can come in different places in a sentence.

I'm never coming back.
See you soon!
Suddenly the phone rang.
I'd really like to come.

➤ This is also true of adverbs in German, but as a general rule they are placed close to the word to which they refer.

- Adverbs of time often come first in the sentence, but this is not fixed.

Morgen gehen wir ins Theater OR
Wir gehen morgen ins Theater. We're going to the theatre tomorrow.

- Adverbs of place can be put at the beginning of a sentence to provide emphasis.

Dort haben sie Fußball gespielt OR
Sie haben dort Fußball gespielt They played football there.

- Adverbs of manner are adverbs which comment on verbs. These are likely to come after the verb to which they refer, but in tenses which are made up of **haben** or **sein** + the past participle of the main verb, they come immediately before the past participle.

Sie spielen gut. They play well.
Sie haben heute gut gespielt. They played well today.
Du benimmst dich immer schlecht. You always behave badly.
Du hast dich schlecht benommen. You have behaved badly.

➪ *For more information on **Forming the past participle**, see page 114.*

➤ Where there is more than one adverb in a sentence, it's useful to remember the following rule:

'time, manner, place'

Wir haben gestern gut dorthin gefunden. **gestern** = adverb of time **gut** = adverb of manner **dorthin** = adverb of place	We found our way there all right yesterday.

➤ Where there is a pronoun object (a word like *her, it, me* or *them*) in a sentence, it comes before all adverbs.

Sie haben es gestern sehr billig gekauft. **es** = pronoun object **gestern** = adverb of time **billig** = adverb of manner	They bought it very cheaply yesterday.

➪ *For more information on **using direct object pronouns**, see page 74.*

Key points

✔ In German, the position of adverbs in a sentence is not fixed, but they generally come close to the words they refer to.

✔ Where there is more than one adverb in a sentence, it is useful to remember the rule: time, manner, place.

✔ Where there is a pronoun object in a sentence, it comes before all adverbs.

Emphasizers

What is an emphasizer?
An **emphasizer** is a type of word commonly used in both German and English, especially in the spoken language, to emphasize or change the meaning of a sentence.

➤ The following words are the most common emphasizers.

- **aber** is used to add emphasis to a statement

Das ist aber schön!	Oh, that's pretty!
Diese Jacke ist aber teuer!	This jacket is really expensive!

- **denn** is also used as a conjunction, but here it is used as an adverb to emphasize the meaning.

Was ist denn hier los?	What's going on here then?
Wo denn?	Where?

Tip

You can't always translate emphasizers directly, especially **denn** and **aber**.

➪ *For more information on **Conjunctions**, see page 168.*

- **doch** is used in one of three ways

As a positive reply to a negative statement or question:

Hat es dir nicht gefallen? – Doch!	Didn't you like it? – Oh yes, I did!

To strengthen an imperative, that is the form of a verb used when giving instructions:

Lass ihn doch!	Just leave him.

To make a question out of a statement:

Das schaffst du doch?	You'll manage it, won't you?

➪ *For more information on **Imperatives**, see page 105.*

- **mal** can be used in one of two ways

With imperatives:

Komm mal her!	Come here!
Moment mal, bitte!	Just a minute!

In informal language:

Mal sehen.	We'll see.
Hören Sie mal …	Look here now …
Er soll es nur mal versuchen!	Just let him try it!

- **ja** can also be used in one of two ways

To strengthen a statement:

Er sieht ja wie seine Mutter aus.	He looks like his mother.
Das kann ja sein.	That may well be.

In informal language:

Ja und?	So what?/What then?
Das ist ja lächerlich.	That's ridiculous.
Das ist es ja.	That's just it.

- **schon** also has more than one use

It is used informally with an imperative:

Mach schon!	Get on with it!

It is also used in other informal statements:

Da kommt sie schon wieder!	Here she comes again!
Schon gut. Ich habe verstanden.	Okay, I get the message.

Key points

✔ There are lots of little adverbs used in both English and German to emphasize the meaning of a sentence in some way.

✔ The most common of these are **aber**, **denn**, **doch**, **mal**, **ja** and **schon**.

PRONOUNS

What is a pronoun? A **pronoun** is a word you use instead of a noun, when you do not need or want to name someone or something directly, for example, *it*, *you*, *none*.

➤ There are several different types of pronoun:

- personal pronouns such as *I, you, he, her* and *they*, which are used to refer to yourself, the person you are talking to, or other people and things. They can be either subject pronouns (*I, you, he* and so on) or object pronouns (*him, her, them* and so on).
- possessive pronouns like *mine* and *yours*, which show who someone or something belongs to.
- indefinite pronouns like *someone* or *nothing*, which refer to people or things in a general way without saying exactly who or what they are.
- relative pronouns like *who, which* or *that*, which link two parts of a sentence together.
- demonstrative pronouns like *this* or *those*, which point things or people out.
- reflexive pronouns – a type of object pronoun that forms part of German reflexive verbs like **sich setzen** (meaning *to sit down*) or **sich waschen** (meaning *to wash*).

➪ *For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 102.*

- the pronouns **wer?** (meaning *who*?) and **was?** (meaning *what*?) and their different forms, which are used to ask questions.

➤ Pronouns often stand in for a noun to save repeating it.

I finished my homework and gave it to my teacher.
Do you remember Jack? I saw him at the weekend.

- Word order with personal pronouns is usually different in German and English.

Personal pronouns: subject

What is a subject pronoun?

A **subject pronoun** is a word such as *I, he, she* and *they*. It refers to the person or thing which performs the action expressed by the verb. Pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who is being talked about, for example: *My brother isn't here at the moment. He'll be back in an hour.*

1 Using subject pronouns

➤ Here are the German subject pronouns or personal pronouns in the nominative case:

Subject Pronoun (Nominative Case)	Meaning
ich	I
du	you *(familiar)*
er	he/it
sie	she/it
es	it/he/she
man	one
wir	we
ihr	you *(plural)*
sie	they
Sie	you *(polite)*
Ich fahre nächste Woche nach Italien.	I'm going to Italy next week.
Wir wohnen in Frankfurt.	We live in Frankfurt.

*For more information on the **Nominative case**, see page 9.*

2 du, ihr or Sie?

➤ In English we have only one way of saying *you*. In German, there are three words: **du**, **ihr** and **Sie**. The word you use depends on:

- whether you are talking to one person or more than one person
- whether you are talking to a friend or family member, or someone else

➤ Use the familiar **du** if talking to one person you know well, such as a friend, someone younger than you or a relative

Kommst du mit ins Kino?	Are you coming to the cinema?

➤ Use the formal or polite **Sie** if talking to one person you do not know so well, such as your teacher, your boss or a stranger.

Was haben Sie gesagt?	What did you say?

Tip

If you are in doubt as to which form of *you* to use, it is safest to use **Sie** and you will not offend anybody. However, once a colleague or acquaintance has suggested you call each other **du**, starting to use **Sie** again may be considered insulting.

➤ Use the familiar **ihr** if talking to more than one person you know well or relatives.

Also, was wollt ihr heute Abend essen?	So, what do you want to eat tonight?

➤ Use **Sie** if talking to more than one person you do not know so well.

Wo fahren Sie hin?	Where are you going to?

Tip

Use **Sie** in more formal situations for both the singular and plural *you*.

Tip

All of the subject pronouns only have a capital letter when they begin a sentence, except for the polite form of *you*, **Sie**, which always has a capital letter.

Ich gebe dir das Buch zurück, wenn ich es zu Ende gelesen habe.	I'll give you the book back when I've finished reading it.
Du kannst mich morgen besuchen, wenn du Zeit hast.	You can come and visit me tomorrow, if you have time.
Wir wären Ihnen sehr dankbar, wenn Sie uns telefonisch benachrichtigen würden.	We'd be very grateful if you could phone and let us know.

3 Er/sie/es

➤ In English we generally refer to things (such as *table, book, car*) only as *it*. In German, **er** (meaning *he*), **sie** (meaning *she*) and **es** (meaning *it*) are used to talk about a thing, as well as about a person or an animal. You use **er** for masculine nouns, **sie** for feminine nouns and **es** for neuter nouns.

Der Tisch ist groß.	→	**Er ist groß.**
The table is large.	→	It is large.
Die Jacke ist blau.	→	**Sie ist blau.**
The jacket is blue.	→	It is blue.
Das Kind stand auf.	→	**Es stand auf.**
The child stood up.	→	He/she stood up.

ⓘ Note that English speakers often make the mistake of calling all objects **es**.

➤ The subject pronoun **sie** (meaning *they*) is used in the plural to talk about things, as well as people or animals. Use **sie** for masculine, feminine and neuter nouns.

„Wo sind Michael und Sebastian?" –	"Where are Michael and Sebastian?" –
„Sie sind im Garten."	"They're in the garden."
„Hast du die Karten gekauft?" – „Nein, sie waren ausverkauft."	"Did you buy the tickets?" – "No, they were sold out."

4 Man

➤ This is often used in German in the same way as we use *you* in English to mean people in general.

Wie schreibt man das?	How do you spell that?
Man kann nie wissen.	You never know.

➤ **Man** can also mean *they* used in a vague way.

Man sagt, dass das Wetter immer schlecht ist.	They say the weather is always bad.

Tip

Man is often used to avoid a passive construction in German.

Man hat das schon oft im Fernsehen gezeigt.	It's already been shown a lot on TV.

➪ *For more information on the **Passive**, see page 150.*

The form of the verb you use with **man** is the same as the **er/sie/es** form.

➪ *For more information on **Verbs**, see page 91.*

Key points

- ✔ The German subject pronouns are: **ich**, **du**, **er**, **sie**, **es**, **Sie** and **man** in the singular, and **wir**, **ihr**, **sie** and **Sie** in the plural.
- ✔ To say *you* in German, use **du** if you are talking to one person you know well or to a child; use **ihr** if you are talking to more than one person you know well and use **Sie** if you are talking to one or more people you do not know well.
- ✔ **Er/sie/es** (masculine/feminine/neuter singular) and **sie** (masculine or feminine or neuter plural) are used to refer to things, as well as to people or animals.

✔ **Man** can mean *you, they* or people in general. It is often used instead of a passive construction.

Personal pronouns: direct object

What is a direct object pronoun?

A **direct object pronoun** is a word such as *me, him, us* and *them* which is used instead of the noun to stand in for the person or thing most directly affected by the action expressed by the verb.

1 Using direct object pronouns

➤ Direct object pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who or what is being talked about, and save having to repeat the noun.

I've lost my glasses. Have you seen them?
"Have you met Jo?"– "Yes, I really like her!"

➤ Here are the German direct object pronouns in the accusative case:

Direct Object Pronoun (Accusative Case)	Meaning
mich	me
dich	you *(familiar)*
ihn	him/it
sie	her/it
es	it/him/her
einen	one
uns	us
euch	you *(plural)*
sie	them
Sie	you *(polite)*
Ich lade dich zum Essen ein.	I'll invite you for a meal.
Sie hat ihn letztes Jahr kennengelernt.	She met him last year.

2 Word order with direct object pronouns

➤ In tenses consisting of one verb part only, for example the present and the simple past, the direct object pronoun usually comes directly AFTER the verb.

Sie bringen ihn nach Hause.	They'll take him home.

➤ In tenses such as the perfect that are formed with **haben** or **sein** and the past participle, the direct object pronoun comes AFTER the part of the verb that comes from **haben** or **sein** and BEFORE the past participle.

Er hat mich durchs Fenster gesehen.	He saw me through the window.

➤ When a modal verb like **wollen** (meaning *to want*) or **können** (meaning *to be able to, can*) is followed by another verb in the infinitive (the *to* form of the verb), the direct object pronoun comes directly AFTER the modal verb.

Wir wollen Sie nicht mehr sehen.	We don't want to see you anymore.

➪ *For more information on **Modal verbs**, see page 136.*

Key points

✔ The German direct object pronouns are: **mich**, **dich**, **ihn**, **sie**, **es**, **Sie** and **einen** in the singular, and **uns**, **euch**, **sie** and **Sie** in the plural.

✔ The direct object pronoun usually comes directly after the verb, but in tenses like the perfect it comes after the part of the verb that comes from **haben** or **sein** and before the past participle.

✔ When a modal verb such as **wollen** is followed by the infinitive of another verb, the direct object pronoun comes directly after the modal verb.

Personal pronouns: indirect object

What is an indirect object pronoun?
When a verb has two objects (a direct one and an indirect one), the **indirect object pronoun** is used instead of a noun to show the person or thing the action is intended to benefit or harm, for example, *me* in *He gave me a book; Can you get me a towel?*

1 Using indirect object pronouns

➤ It is important to understand the difference between direct and indirect object pronouns, as they have different forms in German:

- an indirect object answers the question *who to*? or *who for*? and *to what*? or *for what*?

  He gave me a book. → *Who did he give the book to*? → me (= *indirect object pronoun*)

  Can you get me a towel? → *Who can you get a towel for*? → me (= *indirect object pronoun*)

- if something answers the question *what*? or *who*?, then it is the direct object and NOT the indirect object

  He gave me a book → *What did he give me*? → a book (= *direct object*)

  Can you get me a towel? → *What can you get me*? → a towel (= *direct object*)

➤ Here are the German indirect object pronouns in the dative case:

Indirect Object Pronoun (Dative Case)	Meaning
mir	to/for me
dir	to/for you *(familiar)*
ihm	to/for him/it
ihr	to/for her/it
ihm	to/for it/him/her

einem	to/for one
uns	to/for us
euch	to/for you *(plural)*
ihnen	to/for them
Ihnen	to/for you *(polite)*

Er hat mir das geschenkt.	He gave me that as a present.
Sie haben ihnen eine tolle Geschichte erzählt.	They told them a great story.

2 Word order with indirect object pronouns

➤ Word order for indirect object pronouns is the same as for direct object pronouns. The pronoun usually comes directly after the verb, except with tenses like the perfect and modal verbs such as **wollen**.

Sie bringt mir das Schwimmen bei.	She's teaching me how to swim.
Sie hat es ihm gegeben.	She gave it to him.
Ich will dir etwas sagen.	I want to tell you something.

➤ When you have both a direct object pronoun AND an indirect object pronoun in the same sentence, the direct object pronoun or personal pronoun in the accusative always comes first. A good way of remembering this is to think of the following:

PAD = Pronoun Accusative Dative

Sie haben es ihm verziehen.	They forgave him for it.
Ich bringe es dir schon bei.	I'll teach you.

Key points

✔ The German indirect object pronouns are: **mir**, **dir**, **ihm**, **ihr**, **ihm**, **Ihnen** and **einem** in the singular, and **uns**, **euch**, **ihnen** and **Ihnen** in the plural.

✔ The indirect object pronoun comes after the verb, except with tenses like the perfect and when used with modal verbs such as **wollen**.

✔ The indirect object pronoun always comes after the direct object pronoun.

Personal pronouns: after prepositions

➤ When a personal pronoun is used after a preposition and refers to a person, the personal pronoun is in the case required by the preposition. For example, the preposition **mit** is always followed by the dative case.

Ich bin mit ihm spazieren gegangen.	I went for a walk with him.

➤ When a thing rather than a person is referred to, **da-** is added at the beginning of the preposition:

Manuela hatte ein Messer geholt und wollte damit den Kuchen schneiden.	Manuela had brought a knife and was about to cut the cake with it.

ℹ Note that before a preposition beginning with a vowel, the form **dar-** + preposition is used.

Lege es bitte darauf.	Put it there please.

➤ The following prepositions are affected in this way:

Preposition	**Preposition + da or dar**
an	**daran**
auf	**darauf**
aus	**daraus**
bei	**dabei**
durch	**dadurch**
für	**dafür**
in	**darin**
mit	**damit**
nach	**danach**
neben	**daneben**
über	**darüber**
unter	**darunter**
zwischen	**dazwischen**

➪ *For more information on **Prepositions**, see page 153.*

ℹ Note that these combined forms are also used after verbs followed by prepositions.

sich erinnern an	+ accusative case	to remember

=

Ich erinnere mich nicht daran.	I don't remember (it).

Grammar Extra!

After certain prepositions used to express movement, that is **aus** (meaning *out* or *from*), **auf** (meaning *on*) and **in** (meaning *in* or *into*), combined forms with **hin** and **her** are used to give more emphasis to the action being carried out.

Preposition	**hin or her + Preposition**
aus	**hinaus/heraus**
auf	**hinauf/herauf**
in	**hinein/herein**

Er ging die Treppe leise hinauf.	He went up the stairs quietly.
Endlich fand sie unser Zelt und kam herein.	She finally found our tent and came inside.
Sie öffnete die Reisetasche und legte die Hose hinein.	She opened the bag and put in her trousers.

Key points

- ✔ When a personal pronoun referring to a person is used after a preposition, the personal pronoun is in the case required by the preposition.
- ✔ When a personal pronoun referring to a thing is used after a preposition, the construction **da(r)-** + preposition is used.

Possessive pronouns

What is a possessive pronoun?

In English you can say *This is my car* or *This car is mine*. In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective. In the second, *mine* is a possessive pronoun.

A **possessive pronoun** is one of the words *mine, yours, hers, his, ours* or *theirs,* which are used instead of a noun to show that one thing or person belongs to another, for example, *Ask Carol if this pen is hers.*

➤ German possessive pronouns are the same words as the possessive adjectives **mein**, **dein**, **sein**, **ihr**, **unser**, **euer**, **ihr**, **Ihr**, with the same endings, EXCEPT in the masculine nominative singular, the neuter nominative singular and the neuter accusative singular, as shown below.

	Possessive Adjective	Meaning	Possessive Pronoun	Meaning
Masculine Nominative Singular	**Das ist mein Wagen**	That is my car	**Dieser Wagen ist meiner**	That car is mine
Neuter Nominative Singular	**Das ist mein Buch**	That is my book	**Dieses Buch ist meins**	That book is mine
Neuter Accusative Singular	**Sie hat mein Buch genommen**	She has taken my book	**Sie hat meins genommen**	She has taken mine

➤ Here is the German possessive pronoun **meiner**, meaning *mine,* in all its forms*:*

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	**meiner**	**meine**	**mein(e)s**	**meine**
Accusative	**meinen**	**meine**	**mein(e)s**	**meine**
Genitive	**meines**	**meiner**	**meines**	**meiner**
Dative	**meinem**	**meiner**	**meinem**	**meinen**

ℹ Note that the nominative and accusative neuter forms only of all the possessive pronouns are often pronounced without the last **-e**, for example **meins** instead of **meines**.

Der Wagen da drüben ist meiner.	The car over there is mine.
Er ist kleiner als deiner.	It is smaller than yours.
Das ist besser als meins!	That's better than mine!
Das Haus nebenan ist schöner als seins.	The house next door is nicer than his.
Meine Jacke war teurer als ihre.	My jacket was more expensive than hers.

Note that **deiner**, meaning *yours (familiar)*, **seiner**, meaning *his/its*, **ihrer**, meaning *hers/its/theirs*, **Ihrer**, meaning *yours (polite)*, **unserer**, meaning *ours* and **euerer**, meaning *yours (plural familiar)* have the same endings as **meiner**.

Tip

Unserer, meaning *ours* is often pronounced **unsrer** and **euerer**, meaning *yours (plural familiar)* is often pronounced **eurer**. This pronunciation is occasionally reflected in writing.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	uns(e)rer	uns(e)re	uns(e)res	uns(e)re
Accusative	uns(e)ren	uns(e)re	uns(e)res	uns(e)re
Genitive	uns(e)res	uns(e)rer	uns(e)res	uns(e)rer
Dative	uns(e)rem	uns(e)rer	uns(e)rem	uns(e)ren

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	eu(e)rer	eu(e)re	eu(e)res	eu(e)re
Accusative	eu(e)ren	eu(e)re	eu(e)res	eu(e)re
Genitive	eu(e)res	eu(e)rer	eu(e)res	eu(e)rer
Dative	eu(e)rem	eu(e)rer	eu(e)rem	eu(e)ren

War euer Urlaub billiger als unsrer?	Was your holiday cheaper than ours?

Note the translation of *of mine, of yours* etc, where the personal pronoun in the dative is used:

Er ist ein Freund von mir.	He is a friend of mine.
Ich habe eine CD von dir bei mir zu Hause.	I have a CD of yours at home.

Key points

- ✔ German possessive pronouns have the same form and endings as the possessive adjectives **mein**, **dein**, **sein**, **ihr**, **unser**, **euer**, **ihr**, **Ihr**, except in the masculine nominative singular, the neuter nominative singular and the neuter accusative singular.
- ✔ The nominative and accusative neuter forms of all the possessive pronouns are often pronounced without the last **-e**, for example **meins** instead of **meines**.
- ✔ **Unserer**, meaning *ours* is often pronounced **unsrer** and **euerer**, meaning *yours (plural familiar)* is often pronounced **eurer**. This pronunciation is occasionally reflected in writing.

Indefinite pronouns

What is an indefinite pronoun?

An **indefinite pronoun** is one of a small group of pronouns such as *everything, nobody* and *something* which are used to refer to people or things in a general way without saying exactly who or what they are.

➤ In German, the indefinite pronouns **jemand** (meaning *someone, somebody*) and **niemand** (meaning *no-one, nobody*) are often used in speech without any endings. In written German, the endings are added.

Case	Indefinite Pronoun
Nominative	**jemand/niemand**
Accusative	**jemanden/niemanden**
Genitive	**jemand(e)s/niemand(e)s**
Dative	**jemandem/niemandem**

Ich habe es jemandem gegeben.	I gave it to someone.
Jemand hat es genommen.	Someone has taken it.
Sie hat niemanden gesehen.	She didn't see anyone.
Ich bin unterwegs niemandem begegnet.	I didn't meet anyone on the way.

Tip

If you want to express the sense of *somebody or other*, use **irgendjemand** which is declined like **jemand**.

Ich habe es irgendjemandem gegeben.	I gave it to somebody or other.

➤ The indefinite pronoun **keiner** has the same endings as the article **kein**, **keine**, **kein** except in the nominative masculine and nominative and accusative neuter forms, and can be used to refer to people or things. When referring to people it means *nobody*, *not … anybody* or *none* and when referring to things, it means *not … any* or *none*.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All Genders

	Singular	Singular	Singular	Plural
Nominative	**keiner**	**keine**	**keins**	**keine**
Accusative	**keinen**	**keine**	**keins**	**keine**
Genitive	**keines**	**keiner**	**keines**	**keiner**
Dative	**keinem**	**keiner**	**keinem**	**keinen**

Ich kenne hier keinen.	I don't know anybody here.
Keiner weiß Bescheid über ihn.	Nobody knows about him.
Das trifft auf keinen zu.	That does not apply to anybody.
Er wollte ein Stück Schokolade, aber ich hatte keine.	He wanted a piece of chocolate, but I didn't have any.
„Hast du Geld?" – „Nein, gar keins."	"Have you got any money?" – "No, none at all."

➤ The indefinite pronoun **einer** (meaning *one*) only has a singular form and can also be used to refer to people or things.

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular
Nominative	**einer**	**eine**	**ein(e)s**
Accusative	**einen**	**eine**	**ein(e)s**
Genitive	**eines**	**einer**	**eines**
Dative	**einem**	**einer**	**einem**

Sie trifft sich mit einem ihrer alten Studienfreunde.	She's meeting one of her old friends from university.

Ich brauche nur einen (e.g. **einen Wagen, einen Pullover** etc) OR

Ich brauche nur eine (e.g. **eine Blume, eine Tasche** etc) OR

Ich brauche nur eins (e.g. **ein Buch, ein Notizbuch** etc) I only need one.

Key points

✔ **Jemand** and **niemand** can be used without endings in spoken German but have endings added in written German.

✔ **Keiner** has the same endings as the article **kein**, **keine**, **kein** except in the nominative masculine and nominative and accusative neuter forms, and

refers to people or things.

✔ **Einer** only has a singular form and refers to people or things.

Reflexive pronouns

What is a reflexive pronoun?

A **reflexive pronoun** is an object pronoun such as *myself*, *yourself*, *himself*, *herself* and *ourselves* that forms part of German reflexive verbs like **sich waschen** (meaning *to wash*) or **sich setzen** (meaning *to sit down*). A reflexive verb is a verb whose subject and object are the same and whose action is 'reflected back' to its subject.

➤ German reflexive pronouns have two forms: accusative (for the direct object pronoun) and dative (for the indirect object pronoun), as follows:

Accusative Form	Dative Form	Meaning
mich	**mir**	myself
dich	**dir**	yourself (*familiar*)
sich	**sich**	himself/herself/itself
uns	**uns**	ourselves
euch	**euch**	yourselves (*plural*)
sich	**sich**	themselves
sich	**sich**	yourself/yourselves (*polite*)

Er hat sich rasiert.	He had a shave.
Du hast dich gebadet.	You had a bath.
Ich will es mir zuerst überlegen.	I'll have to think about it first.

☑ Note that unlike personal pronouns and possessives, the polite forms have no capital letter.

Setzen Sie sich bitte.	Please take a seat.
Nehmen Sie sich ruhig etwas Zeit.	Take your time.

➤ The reflexive pronoun usually follows the first verb in the sentence, with certain exceptions:

Sie wird sich darüber freuen.	She'll be pleased about that.

- If the subject and verb are swapped round in the sentence, and the subject is a personal pronoun, then the reflexive pronoun must come AFTER the personal pronoun.

Darüber wird sie sich freuen.	She'll be pleased about that.

- If the sentence is made of up two parts or clauses, then the reflexive pronoun comes AFTER the subject in the second clause.

Ich frage mich, ob sie sich darüber freuen wird.	I wonder if she'll be pleased about that.

➪ *For more information on **Word order**, see page 175.*
➪ *For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 102.*

➤ Unlike English, reflexive pronouns are also used after prepositions when the pronoun 'reflects back' to the subject of the sentence.

Er hatte nicht genug Geld bei sich.	He didn't have enough money on him.
Hatten Sie nicht genug Geld bei sich?	Didn't you have enough money on you?

➤ Another use of reflexive pronouns in German is with transitive verbs where the action is performed for the benefit of the subject, as in the English phrase: I bought *myself* a new hat. The pronoun is not always translated in English.

Ich hole mir einen Kaffee.	I'm going to get (myself) a coffee.
Sie hat sich eine neue Jacke gekauft.	She bought (herself) a new jacket.

➤ Reflexive pronouns are usually used in German where *each other* and *one another* would be used in English.

Wir sind uns letzte Woche begegnet.	We met (each other) last week.

Note that **einander**, (meaning *one another, each other*), which does not change in form, may be used instead of a reflexive pronoun in such cases.

Wir kennen uns schon. OR **Wir kennen einander schon.**	We already know each other.

➤ After prepositions, **einander** is always used instead of a reflexive pronoun. The preposition and **einander** are then joined to form one word.

Sie redeten miteinander.	They were talking to each other.

➤ In English, pronouns used for emphasis are the same as normal reflexive pronouns, for example, *I did it myself*. In German **selbst** or, in informal spoken language, **selber** are used instead of reflexive pronouns for emphasis. They never change their form and are always stressed, regardless of their position in the sentence:

Ich selbst habe es nicht gelesen, aber …	I haven't read it *myself*, but …

Key points

- ✔ German reflexive pronouns have two forms: accusative for the direct object pronoun and dative for the indirect object pronoun.
- ✔ Reflexive pronouns are also used after prepositions when the pronoun 'reflects back' to the subject of the sentence.
- ✔ Reflexive pronouns are usually used in German where *each other* or *one another* would be used in English, but **einander** can be used as an alternative and is always used after prepositions.
- ✔ **Selbst** or, in informal spoken German, **selber** are used instead of reflexive pronouns for emphasis.

Relative pronouns

What is a relative pronoun?

In English a **relative pronoun** is one of the words *who, which* and *that* (and the more formal *whom*). These pronouns are used to introduce information that makes it clear which person or thing is being talked about, for example, *The man who has just come in is Ann's boyfriend; The vase that you broke was quite valuable*.

Relative pronouns can also introduce further information about someone or something, for example, *Peter, who is a brilliant painter, wants to study art; Jane's house, which was built in 1890, needs a lot of repairs*.

➤ In German the most common relative pronouns **der**, **den**, **dessen**, **dem** etc have the same forms as the definite article, except in the dative plural and genitive singular and plural. They are declined as follows:

Case	Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular	All Genders Plural
Nominative	der	die	das	die
Accusative	den	die	das	die
Genitive	dessen	deren	dessen	deren
Dative	dem	der	dem	denen

➤ Relative pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer, but the case they have depends on their function in the relative clause. The relative clause is simply the part of the sentence in which the relative pronoun appears. Relative clauses are ALWAYS separated by commas from the rest of the sentence.

- In the following example, the relative pronoun **den** is in the accusative because it is the direct object in the relative clause.

Der Mann, den ich gestern gesehen habe, kommt aus Zürich.	The man that I saw yesterday comes from Zürich.

- In this second example, the relative pronoun **dessen** is in the genitive because it is used to show that something

belongs to someone.

Das Mädchen, dessen Fahrrad gestohlen worden ist.	The girl whose bike was stolen.

Tip

In English we often miss out the object pronouns *who*, *which* and *that*. For example, we can say both *the friends that I see most*, or *the friends I see most,* and *the house which we want to buy,* or *the house we want to buy*. In German you can NEVER miss out the relative pronoun in this way.

Die Frau, mit der ich gestern gesprochen habe, kennt deine Mutter.	The woman I spoke to yesterday knows your mother.

Note that the genitive forms are used in relative clauses in much the same way as in English, but to translate *one of whom*, *some of whom* use the following constructions.

Das Kind, dessen Fahrrad gestohlen worden war, fing an zu weinen.	The child whose bicycle had been stolen started to cry.
Die Kinder, von denen einige schon lesen konnten, …	The children, some of whom could already read, …
Meine Freunde, von denen einer …	My friends, one of whom …

Grammar Extra!

When a relative clause is introduced by a preposition, the relative pronoun can be replaced by **wo-** or **wor-** if the noun or pronoun it stands for refers to an object or something abstract. The full form of the pronoun plus preposition is much more common.

Das Buch, woraus ich vorgelesen habe, gehört dir.

OR

Das Buch, aus dem ich vorgelesen habe, gehört dir.	The book I read aloud from belongs to you.

➤ In German **wer** and **was** are normally used as interrogative pronouns (meaning *who*? and *what*?) to ask questions. They can also be the subject of a sentence or a relative pronoun. For example, *he who, a woman who, anyone who, those who* etc.

Wer das glaubt, ist verrückt.	Anyone who believes that is mad.
Was du gestern gekauft hast, steht dir ganz gut.	The things you bought yesterday really suit you.

Note that **was** is the relative pronoun used in set expressions with certain neuter forms. For example:

alles, was …	everything which
das, was …	that which
nichts, was …	nothing that
vieles, was …	a lot that
wenig, was …	little that
Nichts, was er sagte, hat gestimmt.	Nothing that he said was true.
Das, was du jetzt machst, ist unpraktisch.	What you are doing now is impractical.
Mit allem, was du gesagt hast, sind wir einverstanden.	We agree with everything you said.

Key points

✔ The most common relative pronouns **der**, **den**, **dessen**, **dem** etc have the same forms as the definite article, except in the dative plural and genitive singular and plural.

✔ Relative pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer, but take their case from their function in the relative clause.

- ✔ In German you can NEVER miss out the relative pronoun, unlike in English.
- ✔ Relative clauses are always separated by commas from the rest of the sentence.
- ✔ **Wer** and **was** are normally used as interrogative pronouns but can also be the subject of a sentence or a relative pronoun.

Interrogative pronouns

What is an interrogative pronoun?
This is one of the words *who, whose, whom*, *what* and *which* when they are used instead of a noun to ask questions, for example, *What's happening?; Who's coming?*

1 Wer? and was?

➤ **Wer** and **was** only have a singular form.

Case	Persons	Things
Nominative	wer?	was?
Accusative	wen?	was?
Genitive	wessen?	–
Dative	wem?	–

- They can be used in direct questions.

Wer hat es gemacht?	Who did it?
Mit wem bist du gekommen?	Who did you come with?
Wo ist der Kugelschreiber, mit dem du es geschrieben hast?	Where is the pen you wrote it with?

- They can also be used in indirect questions.

Ich weiß nicht, wer es gemacht hat.	I don't know who did it.
Sie wollte wissen, mit wem sie fahren sollte.	She wanted to know who she was to travel with.

2 Interrogative pronouns with prepositions

➤ When used with prepositions, **was** usually becomes **wo-** and is combined with the preposition to form one word. Where the preposition begins with a vowel, **wor-** is used instead.

Wodurch ist es zerstört worden?	How was it destroyed?
Worauf sollen wir sitzen? Es gibt keine Stühle.	What should we sit on? There aren't any chairs.

3 Was für ein?, welcher?

➤ These are used to mean *what kind of …?* and *which one?* and are declined like the definite article.

„Er hat jetzt ein Auto" –	"He has a car now." -
„Was für eins hat er gekauft?"	"What kind (of one) did he buy?"
Welches hast du gewollt?	Which one did you want?

➪ *For more information on* ***Words declined like the definite article****, see page 31.*

➤ They can refer to people or things and require the appropriate endings.

Für welchen (e.g. **welchen Job, welchen Whisky** etc**) hat sie sich entschieden?** OR
Für welches (e.g. **welches Haus, welches Buch** etc**) hat sie sich entschieden?** OR
Für welche (e.g. **welche Person, welche Jacke** etc**) hat sie sich entschieden?**
Which one did she choose?

Key points

✔ The interrogative pronouns **wer** and **was** can be used for direct and indirect questions and only have a singular form.

✔ When used with prepositions, **was** becomes **wo-**, or **wor-** when the preposition begins with a vowel.

✔ **Was für ein?** and **welcher?** are used to mean *what kind of …?* and *which one?*

VERBS

What is a verb?
A **verb** is a 'doing' word which describes what someone or something does, what someone or something is, or what happens to them, for example, *be, sing, live.*

Weak, strong and mixed verbs

➤ Verbs are usually used with a noun, with a pronoun such as *I, you* or *she,* or with somebody's name. They can relate to the present, the past and the future; this is called their tense.

➪ *For more information on* ***Nouns*** *and* ***Pronouns****, see pages 1 and 69.*

➤ Verbs are either:

- weak: their forms follow a set pattern. These verbs may also be called regular.
- strong and irregular: their forms change according to different patterns.

OR

- mixed: their forms follow a mixture of the patterns for weak and strong verbs.

➤ English verbs have a base form (the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for example, *walk*). This is the form you look up in a dictionary. The base form can have *to* in front of it, for example, *to walk*. This is called the infinitive.

➤ German verbs also have an infinitive, which is the form shown in a dictionary; most weak, strong and mixed verbs end in **-en**. For example, **holen** (meaning *to fetch*) is weak, **helfen** (meaning *to help*) is strong and **denken** (meaning *to think*) is mixed. All German verbs belong to one of these groups. We will look at each of these three groups in turn on the next few pages.

➤ English verbs have other forms apart from the base form and infinitive: a form ending in *-s* (*walks*), a form ending in *-ing* (*walking*), and a form ending in *-ed* (*walked*).

➤ German verbs have many more forms than this, which are made up of endings added to a stem. The stem of a verb can usually be worked out from the infinitive and can change, depending on the tense of the verb and who or what you are

talking about.

➤ German verb endings also change, depending on who or what you are talking about: **ich** (*I*), **du** (*you* (informal)), **er/sie/es** (*he/she/it*), **Sie** (*you* (formal)) in the singular, or **wir** (*we*), **ihr** (*you* (informal)), **Sie** (*you* (formal)) and **sie** (*they*) in the plural. German verbs also have different forms depending on whether you are referring to the present, future or past.

→ *For **Verb Tables**, see supplement.*

Key points

✔ German verbs have different forms depending on what noun or pronoun they are used with, and on their tense.

✔ They are made up of a stem and an ending. The stem is based on the infinitive and can change in form.

✔ All German verbs fit into one of three patterns or conjugations: weak (and regular), strong (and irregular) or mixed (a mixture of the two).

The present tense

What is the present tense?

The **present tense** is used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student, I travel to college by train, I'm studying languages.*

1 Using the present tense

➤ In English there are two forms of the present tense. One is used to talk about things happening now and the other is used for things that happen all the time. In German, you use the same form for both of these.

- things that are happening now

Es regnet.	It's raining.
Sie spielen Fußball.	They're playing football.

- things that happen all the time, or things that you do as a habit

Hier regnet es viel.	It rains a lot here.
Samstags spielen sie Fußball.	They play football on Saturdays.

➤ In German there are three alternative ways of emphasizing that something is happening now:

- present tense + an adverb

Er kocht gerade das Abendessen.	He's cooking dinner.

- **beim** + an infinitive being used as a noun

Ich bin beim Bügeln.	I am ironing

- **eben/gerade dabei sein zu** (meaning *to be in the process of*) + an infinitive

Sie ist gerade dabei, eine E-Mail zu schreiben.	She is just writing an email.

➤ In English you can also use the present tense to talk about

something that is going to happen in the near future. You can do the same in German.

Morgen spiele ich Tennis.	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.
Wir nehmen den Zug um zehn Uhr.	We're getting the ten o'clock train.

Tip

Although English sometimes uses parts of the verb *to be* to form the present tense of other verbs (for example, *I am listening, she's talking*). German NEVER uses the verb **sein** in this way.

When using **seit** or **seitdem** to describe an action which began in the past and is continuing in the present, the present tense is used in German, where in English a verb form with *have* or *has* is used.

Ich wohne seit drei Jahren hier.	I have been living here for three years.
Seit er krank ist, hat er uns nicht besucht.	He hasn't visited us since he's been ill.
Seitdem sie am Gymnasium ist, hat sie kaum mehr Zeit.	Since she's been going to grammar school, she's hardly had any time.

Note that if the action is finished, the perfect tense is used in German.

Seit seinem Unfall habe ich ihn nur ein einziges Mal gesehen.	I have only seen him once since his accident.

2 Forming the present tense of weak verbs

➤ Nearly all weak verbs in German end in **-en** in their infinitive form. This is the form of the verb you find in the dictionary, for example, **spielen**, **machen**, **holen**. Weak verbs are regular and

their changes follow a set pattern or conjugation.

➤ To know which form of the verb to use in German, you need to work out what the stem of the verb is and then add the correct ending. The stem of most verbs in the present tense is formed by chopping the **-en** off the infinitive.

Infinitive	**Stem** (without **-en**)
spielen (*to play*)	**spiel-**
machen (*to make)*	**mach-**
holen (*to fetch*)	**hol-**

➤ Where the infinitive of a weak verb ends in **-eln** or **-ern**, only the **-n** is chopped off to form the stem.

Infinitive	**Stem** (without **-n**)
wandern (*to hillwalk*)	**wander-**
segeln (*to sail)*	**segel-**

➤ Now you know how to find the stem of a verb, you can add the correct ending. Which one you choose will depend on whether you are referring to **ich**, **du**, **er**, **sie**, **es**, **wir**, **ihr**, **Sie** or **sie**.

➪ *For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 69.*

➤ Here are the present tense endings for weak verbs ending in **-en**:

Pronoun	**Ending**	**Add to Stem, e.g. spiel-**	**Meanings**
ich	**-e**	**ich spiele**	I play I am playing
du	**-st**	**du spielst**	you play you are playing
er **sie** **es**	**-t**	**er spielt** **sie spielt** **es spielt**	he/she/it plays he/she/it is playing
wir	**-en**	**wir spielen**	we play we are playing
ihr	**-t**	**ihr spielt**	you (*plural*) play you are playing
sie spielen **Sie spielen**	**-en**		they play they are playing you (*polite*) play you are playing

Sie macht ihre Hausaufgaben.	She's doing her homework.
Er holt die Kinder.	He's fetching the children.

Note that you add **-n**, not **-en** to the stem of weak verbs ending in **-ern** and **-eln** to get the **wir**, **sie** and **Sie** forms of the present tense.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **wander-**	Meanings
wir	**-n**	**wir wandern**	we hillwalk we are hillwalking
sie wandern	**-n**		they hillwalk they are hillwalking
Sie wandern			you (*polite*) hillwalk you are hillwalking

Sie wandern gern, oder?	You like hillwalking, don't you?
Im Sommer wandern wir fast jedes Wochenende.	In the summer we go hillwalking most weekends.

➤ If the stem of a weak verb ends in **-d** or **-t**, an extra **-e** is added before the usual endings in the **du**, **er**, **sie**, **es** and **ihr** parts of the verb to make pronunciation easier.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **red-**	Meanings
du	**-est**	**du redest**	you talk you are talking
er	**-et**	**er redet**	he/she/it talks
sie		**sie redet**	he/she/it is talks
es		**es redet**	
ihr	**-et**	**ihr redet**	you (*plural*) talk you are talking

Du redest doch die ganze Zeit über deine Arbeit!	You talk about your work all the time!

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **arbeit-**	Meanings
du	**-est**	**du arbeitest**	you work you are working
er	**-et**	**er arbeitet**	he/she/it works
sie		**sie arbeitet**	he/she/it is
es		**es arbeitet**	working
ihr	**-et**	**ihr arbeitet**	you (*plural*) work

	you are working
Sie arbeitet übers Wochenende.	She's working over the weekend.
Ihr arbeitet ganz schön viel.	You work a lot.

➤ If the stem of a weak verb ends in **-m** or **-n**, this extra **-e** is added to make pronunciation easier. If the **-m** or **-n** has a consonant in front of it, the **-e** is added, except if the consonant is **l**, **r** or **h**, for example **lernen**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **atm-**	Meanings
du	**-est**	**du atmest**	you breathe you are breathing
er	**-et**	**er atmet**	he/she/it breathes
sie		**sie atmet**	he/she/it is
es		**es atmet**	breathing
ihr	**-et**	**ihr atmet**	you (*plural*) breathe you are breathing

Du atmest ganz tief.	You're breathing very deeply.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **lern-**	Meanings
du	**-st**	**du lernst**	you learn you are learning
er	**-t**	**er lernt**	he/she/it learns
sie		**sie lernt**	he/she/it is
es		**es lernt**	learning
ihr	**-t**	**ihr lernt**	you (*plural*) learn you are learning

Sie lernt alles ganz schnell.	She learns everything very quickly.

Key points

✔ Weak verbs are regular and most of them form their present tense stem by losing the **-en** from the infinitive.

✔ The present tense endings for weak verbs ending in **-en** are: **-e**, **-st**, **-t**, **-en**, **-t**, **-en**, **-en**.

✔ If the stem of a weak verb ends in **-d**, **-t**, **-m** or **-n**, an extra **-e** is added before the endings to make pronunciation easier.

3 Forming the present tense of strong verbs

➤ The present tense of most strong verbs is formed with the same endings that are used for weak verbs.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **sing-**	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich singe**	I sing I am singing
du	**-st**	**du singst**	you sing you are singing
er **sie** **es**	**-t**	**er singt** **sie singt** **es singt**	he/she/it sings he/she/it is singing
wir	**-en**	**wir singen**	we sing we are singing
ihr	**-t**	**ihr singt**	you (*plural*) sing you are singing
sie singen **Sie singen**	**-en**		they sing they are singing you (*polite*) sing you are singing

Sie singen in einer Gruppe.	They sing in a band.

➤ However, the vowels in stems of most strong verbs change for the **du** and **er/sie/es** forms. The vowels listed below change as shown in nearly all cases:

	long **e**	→	**ie** (*see* **sehen**)
	short **e**	→	**i** (*see* **helfen**)
	a	→	**ä** (*see* **fahren**)
	au	→	**äu** (*see* **laufen**)
	o	→	**ö** (*see* **stoßen**)
●	long **e**	→	**ie**

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **seh-**	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich sehe**	I see I am seeing
du	**-st**	**du siehst**	you see

			you are seeing
er	**-t**	**er sieht**	he/she/it sees
sie		**sie sieht**	he/she/it is seeing
es		**es sieht**	
wir	**-en**	**wir sehen**	we see
			we are seeing
ihr	**-t**	**ihr seht**	you (*plural*) see
			you are seeing
sie sehen	**-en**		they see
Sie sehen			they are seeing
			you (*polite*) see
			you are seeing

Siehst du fern? Are you watching TV?

- short **e** → **i**

Pronoun	**Ending**	**Add to Stem, e.g. helf-**	**Meanings**
ich	**-e**	**ich helfe**	I help
			I am helping
du	**-st**	**du hilfst**	you help
			you are helping
er	**-t**	**er hilft**	he/she/it helps
sie		**sie hilft**	he/she/it is
es		**es hilft**	helping
wir	**-en**	**wir helfen**	we help
			we are helping
ihr	**-t**	**ihr helft**	you (*plural*) help
			you are helping
sie helfen	**-en**		they help
Sie helfen			they are helping
			you (*polite*) help
			you are helping

Heute hilft er beim Kochen. He's helping with the cooking today.

- **a** → **ä**

Pronoun	**Ending**	**Add to Stem, e.g. fahr-**	**Meanings**
ich	**-e**	**ich fahre**	I drive
			I am driving
du	**-st**	**du fährst**	you drive
			you are driving
er	**-t**	**er fährt**	he/she/it drives
sie		**sie fährt**	he/she/it is
es		**es fährt**	driving
wir	**-en**	**wir fahren**	we drive
			we are driving

ihr	**-t**	**ihr fahrt**	you (*plural*) drive you are driving
sie fahren	**-en**		they drive
Sie fahren			they are driving you (*polite*) drive you are driving

Am Samstag fährt sie nach Italien. She's driving to Italy on Saturday.

- **au → äu**

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **lauf-**	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich laufe**	I run I am running
du	**-st**	**du läufst**	you run you are running
er	**-t**	**er läuft**	he/she/it runs
sie		**sie läuft**	he/she/it is
es		**es läuft**	running
wir	**-en**	**wir laufen**	we run we are running
ihr	**-t**	**ihr lauft**	you (*plural*) run you are running
sie laufen	**-en**		they run
Sie laufen			they are running you (*polite*) run you are running

Er läuft die 100 Meter in Rekordzeit. He runs the 100 metres in record time.

- **o → ö**

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **stoß-**	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich stoße**	I push I am pushing
du	**-st**	**du stößt**	you push you are pushing
er	**-t**	**er stößt**	he/she/it pushes
Sie		**sie stößt**	he/she/it is
es		**es stößt**	pushing
wir	**-en**	**wir stoßen**	we push we are pushing
ihr	**-t**	**ihr stoßt**	you (*plural*) push you are pushing
sie stoßen	**-en**		they push
Sie stoßen			they are pushing you (*polite*) push

Pass auf, dass du nicht an den Tisch stößt.	Watch that you don't bump into the table.

Note that strong AND weak verbs whose stem ends in **-s**, **-z**, **-ss** or **-ß** (such as **stoßen**) add **-t** rather than **-st** to get the **du** form in the present tense. However, if the stem ends in **-sch**, the normal **-st** is added.

Verb	**Stem**	**Du Form**
wachsen	**wachs-**	**wächst**
waschen	**wasch-**	**wäschst**

Key points

- ✔ Strong verbs have the same endings in the present tense as weak verbs.
- ✔ The vowel or vowels of the stem of strong verbs change(s) in the present for the **du** and **er/sie/es** forms.

4 Forming the present tense of mixed verbs

➤ There are nine mixed verbs in German. They are very common and are formed according to a mixture of the rules already explained for weak and strong verbs.

➤ The nine mixed verbs are:

Mixed Verb	**Meaning**	**Mixed Verb**	**Meaning**	**Mixed Verb**	**Meaning**
brennen	to burn	**kennen**	to know	**senden**	to send
bringen	to bring	**nennen**	to name	**wenden**	to turn
denken	to think	**rennen**	to run	**wissen**	to know

➤ The present tense of mixed verbs has the same endings as weak verbs and has no vowel or consonant changes in the stem: **ich bringe**, **du bringst**, **er/sie/es bringt**, **wir bringen**, **ihr bringt**,

sie bringen, Sie bringen.

Sie bringt mich nach Hause.	She's bringing me home.
Bringst du mir etwas mit?	Will you bring something for me?

Note that the present tense of the most important strong, weak and mixed verbs is shown in the Verb Tables.

*For **Verb Tables**, see supplement.*

Key points

- ✔ There are nine mixed verbs in German.
- ✔ The present tense of mixed verbs has the same endings as weak verbs and has no vowel or consonant changes in the stem.

Reflexive verbs

What is a reflexive verb?
A **reflexive verb** is one where the subject and object are the same, and where the action 'reflects back' on the subject. Reflexive verbs are used with a reflexive pronoun such as *myself, yourself* and *herself* in English, for example, *I washed myself*; *He shaved himself*.

1 Using reflexive verbs

➤ In German, reflexive verbs are much more common than in English, and many are used in everyday German. Reflexive verbs consist of two parts: the reflexive pronoun **sich** (meaning *himself, herself, itself, themselves* or *oneself*) and the infinitive of the verb.

➪ *For more information on **Reflexive pronouns**, see page 84.*

2 Forming the present tense of reflexive verbs

➤ Reflexive verbs are often used to describe things you do (to yourself) every day or that involve a change of some sort (getting dressed, sitting down, getting excited, being in a hurry).

➤ The reflexive pronoun is either the direct object in the sentence, which means it is in the accusative case, or the indirect object in the sentence, which means it is in the dative case. Only the reflexive pronouns used with the **ich** and **du** forms of the verb have separate accusative and dative forms.

Accusative Form	Dative Form	Meaning
mich	**mir**	myself
dich	**dir**	yourself (*familiar*)
sich	**sich**	himself/herself/itself
uns	**uns**	ourselves
euch	**euch**	yourselves (*plural*)
sich	**sich**	themselves
sich	**sich**	yourself/yourselves (*polite*)

➤ The present tense forms of a reflexive verb work in just the

same way as an ordinary verb, except that the reflexive pronoun is used as well.

➤ Below you will find the present tense of the common reflexive verbs **sich setzen** (meaning *to sit down*) which has its reflexive pronoun in the accusative and **sich erlauben** (meaning *to allow oneself*) which has its reflexive pronoun in the dative.

Reflexive Forms	**Meaning**
ich setze mich	I sit (myself) down
du setzt dich	you sit (yourself) down
er/sie/es setzt sich	he/she/it sits down
wir setzen uns	we sit down
ihr setzt euch	you (*plural familiar*) sit down
sie setzen sich	they sit down
Sie setzen sich	you (*polite form*) sit down
Ich setze mich neben dich.	I'll sit beside you.
Sie setzen sich aufs Sofa.	They sit down on the sofa.

Reflexive Forms	**Meaning**
ich erlaube mir	I allow myself
du erlaubst dir	you allow yourself
er/sie/es erlaubt sich	he/she/it allows himself/herself/itself
wir erlauben uns	we allow ourselves
ihr erlaubt euch	you (*plural familiar*) allow yourselves
sie erlauben sich	they allow themselves
Sie erlauben sich	you (*polite form*) allow yourself
Ich erlaube mir jetzt ein Bier.	Now I'm going to allow myself a beer.
Er erlaubt sich ein Stück Kuchen.	He's allowing himself a piece of cake.

➤ Some of the most common German reflexive verbs are listed here:

Reflexive Verb with Reflexive Pronoun in Accusative	**Meaning**
sich anziehen	to get dressed
sich aufregen	to get excited
sich beeilen	to hurry
sich beschäftigen mit	to be occupied with
sich bewerben um	to apply for
sich erinnern an	to remember
sich freuen auf	to look forward to
sich interessieren für	to be interested in

sich irren	to be wrong
sich melden	to report (for duty etc) *or* to volunteer
sich rasieren	to shave
sich setzen *or* **hinsetzen**	to sit down
sich trauen	to dare
sich umsehen	to look around

Ich ziehe mich schnell an und dann gehen wir.	I'll get dressed quickly and then we can go.
Wir müssen uns beeilen.	We must hurry.

Reflexive Verb with Reflexive Pronoun in Dative	**Meaning**
sich abgewöhnen	to give up (something)
sich ansehen	to have a look at
sich einbilden	to imagine (wrongly)
sich erlauben	to allow oneself
sich leisten	to treat oneself
sich vornehmen	to plan to do
sich vorstellen	to imagine
sich wünschen	to want

Ich muss mir das Rauchen abgewöhnen.	I must give up smoking.
Sie kann sich ein neues Auto nicht leisten.	She can't afford a new car.
Was wünscht ihr euch zu Weihnachten?	What do you want for Christmas?

Note that a direct object reflexive pronoun changes to an indirect object pronoun if another direct object is present.

Ich wasche mich. **mich** = direct object reflexive pronoun	I'm having a wash.
Ich wasche mir die Hände. **mir** = indirect object reflexive pronoun **die Hände** = direct object	I am washing my hands.

For more information on ***Pronouns****, see page 69.*

➤ Some German verbs which are not usually reflexive can be made reflexive by adding a reflexive pronoun.

Soll ich es melden?	Should I report it?

Ich habe mich gemeldet.	I volunteered.

➪ *For more information on **Reflexive pronouns**, see page 84.*

Key points

- ✔ A reflexive verb is made up of a reflexive pronoun and a verb.
- ✔ The direct object pronouns in the accusative are **mich**, **dich**, **sich**, **uns**, **euch**, **sich**, **sich**.
- ✔ The indirect object pronouns in the dative are **mir**, **dir**, **sich**, **uns**, **euch**, **sich**, **sich**.

The imperative

What is the imperative?
An **imperative** is a form of the verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Shut the door!; Sit down!; Don't go!*

1 Using the imperative

➤ In German, there are three main forms of the imperative that are used to give instructions or orders to someone. These correspond to the three different ways of saying *you*: **du**, **ihr** and **Sie**. However, it is only in the **Sie** form of the imperative that the pronoun usually appears – in the **du** and **ihr** forms, the pronoun is generally dropped, leaving only the verb.

Hör zu!	Listen!
Hören Sie zu!	Listen!

2 Forming the present tense imperative

➤ Most weak, strong and mixed verbs form the present tense imperative in the following way:

Pronoun	Form of Imperative	Verb Example	Meaning
du (*singular*)	verb stem (+ **e**)	**hol(e)!**	fetch!
ihr (*plural*)	verb stem + **t**	**holt!**	fetch!
Sie (*polite singular and plural*	verb stem + **en** + **Sie**	**holen Sie!**	fetch!

Note that the **-e** of the **du** form is often dropped, but NOT where the verb stem ends, for example, in **chn-**, **fn-**, or **tm-**. In such cases, the **-e** is kept to make the imperative easier to pronounce.

Hör zu!		Listen!
Hol es!		Fetch it!
BUT:	**Öffne die Tür!**	Open the door!
	Atme richtig durch!	Take a deep breath!
	Rechne noch mal nach!	Do your sums again!

Grammar Extra!

Weak verbs ending in **-eln** or **-ern** also retain this **-e**, but the other **-e** in the stem itself is often dropped in spoken German.

Verb	Meaning	Imperative	Meaning
wandern	to walk	**wand(e)re!**	walk!
handeln	to act	**hand(e)le!**	act!

➤ Any vowel change in the present tense of a strong verb also occurs in the **du** form of its imperative and the **-e** mentioned above is generally not added. However, if this vowel change in the present tense involves adding an umlaut, this umlaut is NOT added to the **du** form of the imperative.

Verb	Meaning	2nd Person Singular	Meaning	2nd Person Singular Imperative	Meaning
nehmen	to take	**du nimmst**	you take	**nimm!**	take!
helfen	to help	**du hilfst**	you help	**hilf!**	help!
laufen	to run	**du läufst**	you run	**lauf(e)!**	run!
stoßen	to push	**du stößt**	you push	**stoß(e)!**	push!

3 Word order with the imperative

➤ An object pronoun is a word like **es** (meaning *it*), **mir** (meaning *me*) or **ihnen** (meaning *them/to them*) that is used instead of a noun as the object of a sentence. In the imperative, the object pronoun comes straight after the verb. However, you can have orders and instructions containing both direct object and indirect object pronouns. In these cases, the direct object pronoun always comes before the indirect object pronoun.

Hol mir das Buch!	Fetch me that book!
Hol es mir!	Fetch me it!
Holt mir das Buch!	Fetch me that book!
Holt es mir!	Fetch me it!
Holen Sie mir das Buch!	Fetch me that book!
Holen Sie es mir!	Fetch me it!

➪ *For more information on **Word order with indirect object pronouns**, see page 77.*

➤ In the imperative form of a reflexive verb such as **sich waschen** (meaning *to wash oneself*) or **sich setzen** (meaning *to sit down*), the reflexive pronoun comes immediately after the verb.

Reflexive verb	Meaning	Imperative Forms	Meaning
sich setzen	to sit down	**setz dich!**	sit down!
		setzt euch!	sit down!
		setzen Sie sich!	do sit down!

➪ *For more information on **Reflexive pronouns**, see page 84.*

➤ In verbs which have separable prefixes, the prefix comes at the end of the imperative.

Verb with Separable Prefix	Meaning	Imperative Example	Meaning
zumachen	to close	**Mach die Tür zu!**	Close the door!
aufhören	to stop	**Hör aber endlich auf!**	Do stop it!

➪ *For more information on **Separable prefixes**, see page 109.*

4 Other points about the imperative

➤ In German, imperatives are usually followed by an exclamation mark, unless they are not being used to give an order or instruction. For example, they can also be used where we might say *Can you…* or *Could you …* in English.

Lass ihn in Ruhe!	Leave him alone!
Sagen Sie mir bitte, wie spät es ist.	Can you tell me what time it is please?

➤ The verb **sein** (meaning *to be*) is a strong, irregular verb. Its imperative forms are also irregular and the **du**, **Sie** and less common **wir** forms are not the same as the present tense forms of the verb.

Sei ruhig!	Be quiet!
Seid ruhig!	Be quiet!
Seien Sie ruhig!	Be quiet!

Tip

The words **auch**, **nur**, **mal** and **doch** are frequently used with imperatives to change their meanings in different ways, but are often not translated since they have no direct equivalent in English.

Geh doch!	Go on!/Get going!
Sag mal, wo warst du?	Tell me, where were you?
Versuchen Sie es mal!	Give it a try!
Komm schon!	Do come/Please come.
Mach es auch richtig!	Be sure to do it properly.

Grammar Extra!

There are some alternatives to using the imperative in German:

- Infinitives (the *to* form of a verb) are often used instead of the imperative in written instructions or public announcements

Einsteigen!	All aboard!
Zwiebeln abziehen und in Ringe schneiden.	Peel the onions and slice them.

- Nouns, adjectives or adverbs can also be used as imperatives

Ruhe!	Be quiet!/Silence!
Vorsicht!	Careful!/Look out!

Some of these have become set expressions

Achtung!	Listen!/Attention!
Rauchen verboten!	No smoking.

Key points

- ✔ The imperative has four forms: **du**, **ihr**, **Sie** and **wir**.
- ✔ The forms are the same as the **ihr**, **Sie** and **wir** forms of the present tense for most strong, weak and mixed verbs, but the **du** form drops the **-st** present tense ending and sometimes adds an **-e** on the end.
- ✔ Any vowel change in the stem of a strong verb also occurs in the imperative, except if it involves adding an umlaut.
- ✔ Object pronouns always go after the verb, with the direct object pronoun coming before the indirect object pronoun.
- ✔ Reflexive pronouns also come after the verb, while separable verb prefixes come at the end of the imperative sentence.
- ✔ **Sein** has irregular imperative forms.

Verb prefixes in the present tense

What is a verb prefix?
In English, a **verb prefix** is a word such as *up* or *down* which is used with verbs to create new verbs with an entirely different meaning.

get → get up → get down

put → put up → put down

shut → shut up → shut down

➤ In German there is a similar system, but the words are put before the infinitive and joined to it:

zu (meaning *to*) + **geben** (meaning *to give*) = **zugeben** (meaning *to admit*)
an (meaning *on, to, by*) + **ziehen** (meaning *to pull*) = **anziehen** (meaning *to put on* or *to attract*)

➤ Prefixes can be found in strong, weak and mixed verbs. Some prefixes are always joined to the verb and never separated from it – these are called inseparable prefixes. However, the majority are separated from the verb in certain tenses and forms, and come at the end of the sentence. They are called separable prefixes.

1 Inseparable prefixes

➤ There are eight inseparable prefixes in German, highlighted in the table of common inseparable verbs below:

Inseparable Verb	Meaning	Inseparable Verb	Meaning	Inseparable Verb	Meaning	Inseparable Verb	Meaning
beschreiben	to describe	**enttäuschen**	to **disappoint**	**gehören**	to belong	**verlieren**	to lose
empfangen	to receive	**erhalten**	to **preserve**	**misstrauen**	to mistrust	**zerlegen**	to dismantle

Note that when you pronounce an inseparable verb, the stress

is NEVER on the inseparable prefix:

er*hal*ten	
ver*lier*en	
emp*fang*en	
ver*gess*en	
Das muss ich wirklich nicht ver*gess*en.	I really mustn't forget that.

2 Separable prefixes

➤ There are many separable prefixes in German and some of them are highlighted in the table below which shows a selection of the most common separable verbs:

Separable Verb	Meaning	Separable Verb	Meaning
abfahren	to leave	**mitmachen**	to join in
ankommen	to arrive	**nachgeben**	to give way/in
aufstehen	to get up	**vorziehen**	to prefer
ausgehen	to go out	**weglaufen**	to run away
einsteigen	to get on	**zuschauen**	to watch
feststellen	to establish/see	**zurechtkommen**	to manage
freihalten	to keep free	**zurückkehren**	to return
herkommen	to come (here)	**zusammenpassen**	to be well-suited; to go well together
hinlegen	to put down		

Der Zug fährt in zehn Minuten ab.	The train is leaving in ten minutes.
Ich stehe jeden Morgen früh auf.	I get up early every morning.
Sie gibt niemals nach.	She'll never give in.

3 Word order with separable prefixes

➤ In tenses consisting of one verb part only, for example the present and the imperfect, the separable prefix is placed at the end of the main clause.

Der Bus kam immer spät an.	The bus was always late.

➪ *For more information on Separable prefixes in the perfect tense, see page 115.*

➤ In subordinate clauses, the prefix is attached to the verb, which is then placed at the end of the subordinate clause.

Weil der Bus spät ankam, verpasste sie den Zug.	Because the bus arrived late, she missed the train.

➪ *For more information on **Subordinate clauses**, see page 177.*

➤ In infinitive phrases using **zu**, the **zu** is inserted between the verb and its prefix to form one word.

Um rechtzeitig aufzustehen, muss ich den Wecker stellen.	In order to get up on time I'll have to set the alarm.

➪ *For more information on the **Infinitive**, see page 134.*

4 Verb combinations

➤ Below you will see some other types of word which can be combined with verbs. These combinations are mostly written as two separate words (but some may also be written as one word) and behave like separable verbs:

- Noun + verb combinations

Ski fahren	to ski
Ich fahre gern Ski.	I like skiing.
Schlittschuh laufen	to ice-skate
Im Winter kann man Schlittschuh laufen.	You can ice-skate in winter.

- Infinitive + verb combinations

kennenlernen (or kennen lernen)	to meet *or* to get to know
Meine Mutter möchte dich kennenlernen.	My mother wants to meet you.
Er lernt sie nie richtig kennen.	He'll never get to know her properly.
sitzen bleiben (or sitzenbleiben)	to remain seated
Bleiben Sie bitte sitzen.	Please remain seated.
spazieren gehen (or spazierengehen)	to go for a walk
Er geht jeden Tag spazieren.	He goes for a walk every day.

- Adjective + verb combinations

bekannt machen	to announce
Die Regierung will das morgen bekannt machen.	The government plans to announce it tomorrow.

- Some adverb + verb combinations

gut riechen	to smell good
Das Essen riecht gut.	The food smells good.

- Verb combinations with **-seits**

abseitsstehen	to stand apart
Sie steht immer abseits von den anderen.	She always stands apart from the others.

- Prefix combinations with **sein**

auf sein	to be open *or* to be up
Das Fenster ist auf.	The window is open.
Die Geschäfte sind am Sonntag nicht auf.	The shops are closed on Sundays.
Sie ist noch nicht auf.	She isn't up yet.
zu sein	to be shut
Das Fenster ist zu.	The window is shut.

Note that **auf** (meaning *open*) is another word for **geöffnet** and **zu** (meaning *shut* or *closed*) is another word for **geschlossen**.

Key points

- ✔ Prefixes can be found in strong, weak and mixed verbs.
- ✔ Eight prefixes are inseparable and are never separated from the verb.
- ✔ Most prefixes are separable and are separated from the verb in certain tenses and forms and come at the end of the sentence.

The perfect tense

What is the perfect tense?

The **perfect** is one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially about a single, rather than a repeated action.

Den Nachtisch habe ich schon gegessen.	I've already eaten dessert.

1 Using the perfect tense

➤ The German perfect tense is the one generally used to translate an English form such as *I have finished*.

I have finished the book.	**Ich habe das Buch zu Ende gelesen.**

➤ The perfect tense is also sometimes used to translate an English form such as *I gave*.

I gave him my phone number.	**Ich habe ihm meine Nummer gegeben.**

Tip

When a specific time in the past is referred to, you use the perfect tense in German. In English you use the *-ed* form instead.

Gestern Abend habe ich einen Krimi im Fernsehen gesehen.	Last night I watched a thriller on TV.

➤ The perfect tense is used with **seit** or **seitdem** to describe a completed action in the past, whereas the present tense is used to describe an action which started in the past and is still continuing in the present.

Seit dem Unfall habe ich sie nur einmal gesehen.	I've only seen her once since the accident.

➪ *For more information on this use of the* ***Present tense****, see page 94.*

2 Forming the perfect tense

➤ Unlike the present and imperfect tenses, the perfect tense has TWO parts to it:

- the present tense of the irregular weak verb **haben** (meaning *to have*) or the irregular strong verb **sein** (meaning *to be*). They are also known as auxiliary verbs.
- a part of the main verb called the *past participle*, like *given, finished* and *done* in English.

➤ In other words, the perfect tense in German is like the form *I have done* in English.

Pronoun	Ending	Present Tense	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich habe**	I have
du	**-st**	**du hast**	you have
er	**-t**	**er hat**	he/she/it has
sie		**sie hat**	
es		**es hat**	
wir	**-en**	**wir haben**	we have
ihr	**-t**	**ihr habt**	you (*plural*) have
sie	**-en**	**sie haben**	they have
Sie		**Sie haben**	you (*polite*) have

Pronoun	Ending	Present Tense	Meanings
ich	**–**	**ich bin**	I am
du	**–**	**du bist**	you are
er	**–**	**er ist**	he/she/it is
sie		**sie ist**	
es		**es ist**	
wir	**–**	**wir sind**	we are
ihr	**–**	**ihr seid**	you (*plural*) are
sie	**–**	**sie sind**	they are
Sie		**Sie sind**	you (*polite*) are

3 Forming the past participle

➤ To form the past participle of weak verbs, you add **ge-** to the beginning of the verb stem and **-t** to the end.

Infinitive	Take off **-en**	Add **ge-** and **-t**
holen (*to fetch*)	**hol-**	**geholt**
machen (*to do*)	**mach-**	**gemacht**

Note that one exception to this rule is weak verbs ending in **-ieren**, which omit the **ge**.

studieren (*to study*) **studiert** (*studied*)

➤ To form the past participle of strong verbs, you add **ge-** to the beginning of the verb stem and **-en** to the end. The vowel in the stem may also change.

Infinitive	Take off **-en**	Add **ge-** and **-en**
laufen (*to run*)	**lauf-**	**gelaufen**
singen (*to sing*)	**sing-**	**gesungen**

➤ To form the past participle of mixed verbs, you add **ge-** to the beginning of the verb stem and, like weak verbs, **-t** to the end. As with many strong verbs, the stem vowel may also change.

Infinitive	Take off **-en**	Add **ge-** and **-t**
bringen (*to bring*)	**bring-**	**gebracht**
denken (*to think*)	**denk-**	**gedacht**

➤ The perfect tense of separable verbs is also formed in the above way, except that the separable prefix is joined on to the front of the **ge: ich habe die Flasche aufgemacht**, **du hast die Flasche aufgemacht** and so on.

➤ With inseparable verbs, the only difference is that past participles are formed without the **ge: ich habe Kaffee bestellt**, **du hast Kaffee bestellt** and so on.

*For more information on **Separable** and **Inseparable verbs**, see page 109.*

4 Verbs that form their perfect tense with haben

➤ Most weak, strong and mixed verbs form their perfect tense with **haben**, for example **machen**:

Pronoun	haben	Past Participle	Meaning
ich	**habe**	**gemacht**	I did, I have done

du	**hast**	**gemacht**	you did, you have done
er **sie** **es**	**hat**	**gemacht**	he/she/it did, he/she/it has done
wir	**haben**	**gemacht**	we did, we have done
ihr	**habt**	**gemacht**	you (*plural familiar*) did, you have done
sie	**haben**	**gemacht**	they did, they have done
Sie	**haben**	**gemacht**	you (*singular/plural formal*) did, you have done

Sie hat ihre Hausaufgaben schon gemacht.	She has already done her homework.
Haben Sie gut geschlafen?	Did you sleep well?
Er hat fleißig gearbeitet.	He has worked hard.

5 haben or sein?

➤ MOST verbs form their perfect tense with **haben**.

Ich habe das schon gemacht.	I've already done that.
Wo haben Sie früher gearbeitet?	Where did you work before?

➤ With reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun comes immediately after **haben**.

Ich habe mich heute Morgen geduscht.	I had a shower this morning.
Sie hat sich nicht daran erinnert.	She didn't remember.

➪ *For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 102.*

➤ There are two main groups of verbs which form their perfect tense with **sein** instead of **haben**, and most of them are strong verbs:

- verbs which take no direct object and are used mainly to talk about movement or a change of some kind, such as:

gehen	to go
kommen	to come
ankommen	to arrive
abfahren	to leave
aussteigen	to get off
einsteigen	to get on
sterben	to die
sein	to be
werden	to become
bleiben	to remain
begegnen	to meet
gelingen	to succeed
aufstehen	to get up
fallen	to fall
Gestern bin ich ins Kino gegangen.	I went to the cinema yesterday.
Sie ist heute Morgen ganz früh abgefahren.	She left really early this morning.
An welcher Haltestelle sind Sie ausgestiegen?	Which stop did you get off at?

- two verbs which mean *to happen*.

Was ist geschehen/passiert?	What happened?

→ Here are the perfect tense forms of a very common strong verb, **gehen**, in full:

Pronoun	**sein**	**Past Participle**	**Meanings**
ich	**bin**	**gegangen**	I went, I have gone
du	**bist**	**gegangen**	you went, you have gone
er **sie** **es**	**ist**	**gegangen**	he/she/it went, he/she/it has gone
wir	**sind**	**gegangen**	we went, we have gone
ihr	**seid**	**gegangen**	you (*plural familiar*) went, you have gone
sie	**sind**	**gegangen**	they went, they have gone
Sie	**sind**	**gegangen**	you (*singular/plural formal*) went, you have gone

☑ Note that the perfect tense of the most important strong, weak and mixed verbs is shown in the Verb Tables.

➪ *For **Verb Tables**, see supplement.*

Key points

- ✔ The perfect tense describes things that happened and were completed in the past.
- ✔ The perfect tense is formed with the present tense of **haben** or **sein** and a past participle.
- ✔ The past participle begins in **ge-** and ends in **-t** for weak verbs, in **ge-** and **-en** for strong verbs, often with a stem vowel change, and in **ge-** and **-t** for mixed verbs, often with a stem vowel change.
- ✔ Most verbs take **haben** in the perfect tense. Many strong verbs, especially those referring to movement or change, take **sein**.

The imperfect tense

What is the imperfect tense?

The **imperfect tense** is one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what used to happen, for example, *It was sunny at the weekend; I used to walk to school.*

1 Using the imperfect tense

➤ The German imperfect tense is used:

- to describe actions in the past which the speaker feels have no link with the present

Er kam zu spät, um teilnehmen zu können.	He arrived too late to take part.

- to describe what things were like and how people felt in the past

Ich war ganz traurig, als sie wegging.	I was very sad when she left.
Damals gab es ein großes Problem mit Drogen.	There was a big problem with drugs at that time.

- to say what used to happen or what you used to do regularly in the past

Wir machten jeden Tag einen Spaziergang.	We used to go for a walk every day.
Samstags spielte ich Tennis.	I used to play tennis on Saturdays.

Note that if you want to talk about an event or action that took place and was completed in the past, you normally use the perfect tense in German conversation. The imperfect tense is normally used in written German.

Was hast du heute gemacht?	What have you done today?

*For more information on the **Perfect tense**, see page 113.*

➤ When using **seit** or **seitdem** to describe something that had happened or had been true at a point in the past, the imperfect

is used in German, where in English a verb form with *had* is used.

Sie war seit ihrer Heirat als Lehrerin beschäftigt.	She had been working as a teacher since her marriage.

➪ *For more information on the **Pluperfect tense**, see page 127.*

Tip

Remember that you NEVER use the verb **sein** to translate *was* or *were* in forms like *was raining* or *were looking* and so on. You change the German verb ending instead.

2 Forming the imperfect tense of weak verbs

➤ To form the imperfect tense of weak verbs, you use the same stem of the verb as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **ich**, **du**, **er**, **sie**, **es**, **wir**, **ihr**, **sie** or **Sie**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **spiel-**	Meanings
ich	**-te**	**ich spielte**	I played I was playing
du	**-test**	**du spieltest**	you played you were playing
er	**-te**	**er spielte**	he/she/it played
sie		**sie spielte**	he/she/it played
es		**es spielte**	he/she/it were playing
wir	**-ten**	**wir spielten**	we played we were playing
ihr	**-tet**	**ihr spieltet**	you (*plural*) played you were playing
sie	**-ten**	**sie spielten**	they played they were playing
Sie		**Sie spielten**	you (*polite*) played you were playing

Sie holte ihn jeden Tag von der	She picked him up from work every

Arbeit ab.	day.
Normalerweise machte ich nach dem Abendessen meine Hausaufgaben.	I usually did my homework after dinner.

➤ As with the present tense, some weak verbs change their spellings slightly when they are used in the imperfect tense.

- If the stem ends in **-d**, **-t**, **-m** or **-n** an extra **-e** is added before the usual imperfect endings to make pronunciation easier.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **arbeit-**	Meanings
ich	**-ete**	**ich arbeitete**	I worked I was working
du	**-etest**	**du arbeitetest**	you worked you were working
er **sie** **es**	**-ete**	**er arbeitete** **sie arbeitete** **es arbeitete**	he/she/it worked he/she/it was working
wir	**-eten**	**wir arbeiteten**	we worked we were working
ihr	**-etet**	**ihr arbeitetet**	you (*plural*) worked you were working
sie	**-eten**	**sie arbeiteten**	they worked they were working
Sie	**-eten**	**Sie arbeiteten**	you (*polite*) worked you (*polite*) were working

Sie arbeitete übers Wochenende.	She was working over the weekend.
Ihr arbeitetet ganz schön viel.	You worked a lot.

- If the **-m** or **-n** has one of the consonants **l**, **r** or **h** in front of it, the **-e** is not added as shown in the **du**, **er**, **sie** and **es**, and **ihr** forms below.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **lern-**	Meanings
du	**-test**	**du lerntest**	you learned you were learning
er **sie**	**-te**	**er lernte** **sie lernte**	he/she/it learned he/she/it was

es		**es lernte**	learning
ihr	**-tet**	**ihr lerntet**	you (*plural*) learned you were learning

Sie lernte alles ganz schnell. She learned everything very quickly.

3 Forming the imperfect tense of strong verbs

➤ The main difference between strong verbs and weak verbs in the imperfect is that strong verbs have a vowel change and take a different set of endings. For example, let's compare **sagen** and **rufen**:

	Infinitive	Meaning	Present	Imperfect
Weak	**sagen**	to say	**er sagt**	**er sagte**
Strong	**rufen**	to shout	**er ruft**	**er rief**

➤ To form the imperfect tense of strong verbs you add the following endings to the stem, which undergoes a vowel change.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **rief-**	Meanings
ich	**–**	**ich rief**	I shouted I was shouting
du	**-st**	**du riefst**	you shouted you were shouting
er	**–**	**er rief**	he/she/it shouted
sie		**sie rief**	he/she/it were
es		**es rief**	shouting
wir	**-en**	**wir riefen**	we shouted we were shouting
ihr	**-t**	**ihr rieft**	you (*plural*) shouted you were shouting
sie	**-en**	**sie riefen**	they shouted they were
Sie		**Sie riefen**	shouting you (*polite*) shouted you were shouting

Sie rief mich immer freitags an. She always called me on Friday.
Sie liefen die Straße entlang. They ran along the street.
Als Kind sangst du viel. You used to sing a lot as a child.

➤ As in other tenses, the verb **sein** is a very irregular strong verb since the imperfect forms seem to have no relation to the infinitive form of the verb: **ich war**, **du warst**, **er/sie/es war**, **wir waren**, **ihr wart**, **sie/Sie waren**.

4 Forming the imperfect tense of mixed verbs

➤ The imperfect tense of mixed verbs is formed by adding the weak verb endings to a stem whose vowel has been changed as for a strong verb.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to Stem, e.g. **kann-**	Meanings
ich	**-te**	**ich kannte**	I knew
du	**-test**	**du kanntest**	you knew
er	**-te**	**er kannte**	he/she/it knew
sie		**sie kannte**	
es		**es kannte**	
wir	**-ten**	**wir kannten**	we knew
ihr	**-tet**	**ihr kanntet**	you (*plural*) knew
sie	**-ten**	**sie kannten**	they knew
Sie		**Sie kannten**	you (*polite*) knew
Er kannte die Stadt nicht.		He didn't know the town.	

➤ **Bringen** (meaning *to bring*) and **denken** (meaning *to think*) have a vowel AND a consonant change in their imperfect forms

bringen (*to bring*)	**denken** (*to think*)
ich brachte	**ich dachte**
du brachtest	**du dachtest**
er/sie/es brachte	**er/sie/es dachte**
wir brachten	**wir dachten**
ihr brachtet	**ihr dachtet**
sie/Sie brachten	**sie/Sie dachten**

Note that the imperfect tense of the most important strong, weak and mixed verbs is shown in the Verb Tables.

→ *For **Verb Tables**, see supplement.*

Key points

- ✔ The imperfect tense is generally used for things that happened regularly or for descriptions in the past, especially in written German.
- ✔ The imperfect of weak verbs is formed using the same stem of the verb as for the present tense + these endings: **-te**, **-test**, **-te**, **-ten**, **-tet**, **-ten**.
- ✔ If the stem of a weak verb ends in **-d**, **-t**, **-m** or **-n** an extra **-e** is added before the usual imperfect endings to make pronunciation easier. If the **-m** or **-n** has one of the consonants **l**, **r** or **h** in front of it, the **-e** is not added.
- ✔ The imperfect tense of strong verbs is formed by adding the following endings to the stem, which undergoes a vowel change: **-**, **-st**, **-**, **-en**, **-t**, **-en**.
- ✔ The imperfect tense of mixed verbs is formed by adding the weak verb endings to a stem whose vowel has been changed as for a strong verb. The verbs **bringen** and **denken** also have a consonant change.

The future tense

What is the future tense?

The **future tense** is a verb tense used to talk about something that will happen or will be true.

1 Using the future tense

➤ In English the future tense is often shown by *will* or its shortened form *'ll*.

What will you do?

The weather will be warm and dry tomorrow.

He'll be here soon.

I'll give you a call.

➤ Just as in English, you can use the present tense in German to refer to something that is going to happen in the future.

Wir fahren nächstes Jahr nach Griechenland.	We're going to Greece next year.
Ich nehme den letzten Zug heute Abend.	I'm taking the last train tonight.

➤ The future tense IS used however to:

- emphasize the future

Das werde ich erst nächstes Jahr machen können.	I won't be able to do that until next year.

- express doubt or suppose something about the future

Wenn sie zurückkommt, wird sie mir bestimmt helfen.	I'm sure she'll help me when she returns.

➤ In English we often use *going to* followed by an infinitive to talk about something that will happen in the immediate future. You CANNOT use the German verb **gehen** (meaning *to go*) followed by an infinitive in the same way. Instead, you use either the present or the future tense.

Das wirst du bereuen.	You're going to regret that.
Wenn er sich nicht beeilt, verpasst er den Zug.	He's going to miss the train if he doesn't hurry up.

2 Forming the future tense

➤ The future tense has TWO parts to it and is formed in the same way for all verbs, be they weak, strong or mixed:

- the present tense of the strong verb **werden** (meaning *to become*), which acts as an auxiliary verb like **haben** and **sein** in the perfect tense

Pronoun	Ending	Present Tense	Meanings
ich	**-e**	**ich werde**	I become
du	**-st**	**du wirst**	you become
er	**–**	**er wird**	he/she/it becomes
sie		**sie wird**	
es		**es wird**	
wir	**-en**	**wir werden**	we become
ihr	**-t**	**ihr werdet**	you (*plural*) become
sie	**-en**	**sie werden**	they become
Sie	**-en**	**Sie werden**	you (*polite*) become

- the infinitive of the main verb, which normally goes at the end of the clause or sentence.

Pronoun	Present Tense of **werden**	Infinitive of Main Verb	Meanings
ich	**werde**	**holen**	I will fetch
du	**wirst**	**holen**	you will fetch
er **sie** **es**	**wird**	**holen**	he/she/it will fetch
wir	**werden**	**holen**	we will fetch
ihr	**werdet**	**holen**	you (*plural*) will fetch
sie	**werden**	**holen**	they will fetch
Sie			you (*polite*) will fetch

Morgen werde ich mein Fahrrad holen.	I'll fetch my bike tomorrow.
Sie wird dir meine Adresse geben.	She'll give you my address.
Wir werden draußen warten.	We'll wait outside.

Note that in reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun comes after the present tense of **werden**.

Ich werde mich nächste Woche vorbereiten.	I'll prepare next week.

Key points

- ✔ You can use a present tense in German to talk about something that will happen or be true in the future, just as in English.
- ✔ The future tense is formed from the present tense of **werden** and the infinitive of the main verb.
- ✔ You CANNOT use **gehen** with an infinitive to refer to things that will happen in the immediate future.

✔ The future tense is used to emphasize the future and express doubt or suppose something about the future.

The conditional

What is the conditional?

The **conditional** is a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or that would be true under certain conditions, for example, *I would help you if I could*. It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, *Could you give me the bill?*

1 Using the conditional

➤ You can often recognize a conditional in English by the word *would* or its shortened form *'d*.

I would be sad if you left.
If you asked him, he'd help you.

➤ In German, the conditional is also used to express *would*.

Ich würde dir schon helfen, ich habe aber keine Zeit.	I would help you, but I don't have the time.
Was würden Sie an meiner Stelle tun?	What would you do in my position?

2 Forming the conditional

➤ The conditional has TWO parts to it and is formed in the same way for all verbs, be they weak, strong or mixed:

- the **würde** form or subjunctive of the verb **werden** (meaning *to become*)
- the infinitive of the main verb, which normally goes at the end of the clause.

Pronoun	Subjunctive of **werden**	Infinitive of Main Verb	Meanings
ich	**würde**	**holen**	I would fetch
du	**würdest**	**holen**	you would fetch
er **sie** **es**	**würde**	**holen**	he/she/it would fetch
wir	**würden**	**holen**	we would fetch
ihr	**würdet**	**holen**	you (*plural*) would

sie	**würden**	**holen**	fetch they would fetch
Sie			you (*polite*) would fetch

Das würde ich nie machen.	I would never do that.
Würdest du mir etwas Geld leihen?	Would you lend me some money?
Würden Sie jemals mit dem Rauchen aufhören?	Would you ever stop smoking?

Note that you have to be careful not to mix up the present tense of **werden**, used to form the future tense, and the subjunctive of **werden**, used to form the conditional. They look similar.

FUTURE USE	CONDITIONAL USE
ich werde	**ich würde**
du wirst	**du würdest**
er/sie/es wird	**er/sie/es würde**
wir werden	**wir würden**
ihr werdet	**ihr würdet**
sie/Sie werden	**sie/Sie würden**

Key points

- ✔ The conditional tense is formed from the subjunctive or **würde** part of **werden** and the infinitive of the main verb.
- ✔ The future tense is often confused with the conditional.

The pluperfect tense

What is the pluperfect tense?

The **pluperfect** is a verb tense which describes something that had happened or had been true at a point in the past, for example, *I'd forgotten to finish my homework*.

1 Using the pluperfect tense

➤ You can often recognize a pluperfect tense in English by a form like *I had arrived*, *you'd fallen*.

Sie waren schon weggefahren.	They had already left.
Diese Bücher hatten sie schon gelesen.	They had already read these books.
Meine Eltern waren schon ins Bett gegangen.	My parents had gone to bed already.

Note that when translating *had done/had been doing* in conjunction with **seit**/**seitdem**, you use the imperfect tense in German.

Sie machte es seit Jahren.	She had been doing it for years.

*For more information on the **Imperfect tense**, see page 118.*

2 Forming the pluperfect tense

➤ Like the perfect tense, the pluperfect tense in German has two parts to it:

- the imperfect tense of the verb **haben** (meaning *to have*) or **sein** (meaning *to be*)
- the past participle

➤ If a verb takes **haben** in the perfect tense, then it will take **haben** in the pluperfect too. If a verb takes **sein** in the perfect, then it will take **sein** in the pluperfect.

*For more information on the **Imperfect tense** and the **Perfect tense**, see pages 118 and 113.*

3 Verbs taking haben

➤ Here are the pluperfect tense forms of **holen** (meaning *to fetch*) in full.

Pronoun	haben	Past Participle	Meanings
ich	hatte	geholt	I had fetched
du	hattest	geholt	you had fetched
er sie es	hatte	geholt	he/she/it had fetched
wir	hatten	geholt	we had fetched
ihr	hattet	geholt	you (*plural*) had fetched
sie	hatten	geholt	they had fetched
Sie			you (*polite*) had fetched

Ich hatte schon mit ihm gesprochen.	I had already spoken to him.

4 Verbs taking sein

➤ Here are the pluperfect tense forms of **reisen** (meaning *to travel*) in full.

Pronoun	sein	Past Participle	Meanings
ich	war	gereist	I had travelled
du	warst	gereist	you had travelled
er sie es	war	gereist	he/she/it had travelled
wir	waren	gereist	we had travelled
ihr	wart	gereist	you (*plural*) had travelled
sie	waren	gereist	they had travelled
Sie			you (*polite*) had travelled

Sie war sehr spät angekommen.	She had arrived very late.

Key points

✔ The pluperfect tense describes things that had

happened or were true at a point in the past before something else happened.

✔ It is formed with the imperfect tense of **haben** or **sein** and the past participle.

✔ Verbs which take **haben** in the perfect tense will take **haben** in the pluperfect tense and those which take **sein** in the perfect tense will take **sein** in the pluperfect tense.

The subjunctive

What is the subjunctive?

The **subjunctive** is a verb form that is used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show there is doubt about whether something will happen or whether something is true. It is only used occasionally in modern English, for example, *If I were you, I wouldn't bother; So be it.*

1 Using the subjunctive

➤ In German, subjunctive forms are used much more frequently than in English, to express uncertainty, speculation or doubt.

Es könnte doch wahr sein.	It could be true.

➤ Subjunctives are also commonly used in indirect speech, also known as reported speech. What a person asks or thinks can be reported directly:

Sie sagte: „Er kennt deine Schwester"	She said, "He knows your sister"

OR indirectly:

Sie sagte, er kenne meine Schwester.	She said he knew my sister.

ℹ Note that the change from direct to indirect speech is indicated by a change of tense in English, but is shown by a change to the subjunctive form in German.

Grammar Extra!

➤ There are two ways of introducing indirect speech in German, as in English.

- The conjunction **dass** (meaning *that*) begins the clause containing the indirect speech and the verb goes to the end

of the clause.

Sie hat uns gesagt, dass sie Italienisch spreche.	She told us that she spoke Italian.

- **dass** is dropped and normal word order applies in the second clause – the verb comes directly after the subject.

Sie hat uns gesagt, sie spreche Italienisch.	She told us she spoke Italian.

➤ If you want to express a possible situation in English, for example, *I would be happy if you came*, you use '*if*' followed by the appropriate tense of the verb. In German you use the conjunction **wenn** followed by a subjunctive form of the verb.

Note that the verb ALWAYS goes to the end of a clause beginning with **wenn**.

- **wenn** (meaning *if, whenever*)

Wenn du käm(e)st *(subjunctive)*, **wäre** *(subjunctive)* **ich froh.**

OR

Wenn du käm(e)st, würde ich froh sein.	I would be happy if you came.

Note that the main clause can either have a subjunctive form or the conditional form.

Wenn es mir nicht gefiele, würde ich es nicht bezahlen.

OR

Wenn es mir nicht gefiele,	If I wasn't happy with it,
bezahlte *(subjunctive)* **ich es nicht.**	I wouldn't pay for it.

Tip

The imperfect forms of **bezahlen**, and of all weak

verbs, are exactly the same as the imperfect subjunctive forms, so it's better to use a conditional tense to avoid confusion.

➤ **wenn … nur** (meaning *if only*), **selbst wenn** (meaning *even if* or *even though*) and **wie** (meaning *how*) work in the same way as **wenn**. This means that the normal word order is changed and the verb comes at the end of the clause.

- **wenn … nur**

Wenn wir nur erfolgreich wären!	If only we were successful!

- **selbst wenn**

Selbst wenn er etwas wüsste, würde er nichts sagen.	Even if he knew about it, he wouldn't say anything.

- **wie**, expressing uncertainty

Er wunderte sich, wie es ihr wohl ginge.	He wondered how she was.

➤ Unlike **wenn** and **wie** etc, the word order does not change after **als** (meaning *as if* or *as though*) when it is used in conditional clauses: it is immediately followed by the verb.

Sie sah aus, als sei sie krank.	She looked as if she were ill.

Tip

It is quite common to hear the subjunctive used when someone is asking you something politely, for example, the person serving you in a shop might ask:

Wäre da sonst noch etwas?	Will there be anything else?

2 Forming the present subjunctive

➤ The three main forms of the subjunctive are the present subjunctive, the imperfect subjunctive and the pluperfect subjunctive.

➤ The present subjunctive of weak, strong and mixed verbs has the same endings:

Pronoun	Present Subjunctive: Weak and Strong Verb Endings
ich	**-e**
du	**-est**
er/sie/es	**-e**
wir	**-en**
ihr	**-et**
sie/Sie	**-en**

- **holen** (weak verb, meaning *to fetch*)

ich hole	I fetch
du holest	you fetch

- **fahren** (strong verb, meaning *to drive, to go*)

ich fahre	I drive, I go
du fahrest	you drive, you go

- **denken** (mixed verb, meaning *to think*)

ich denke	I think
du denkest	you think

Tip

The present and the present subjunctive endings are exactly the same for the **ich**, **wir** and **sie**/**Sie** forms.

3 Forming the imperfect subjunctive

➤ The imperfect subjunctive is very common and is not always used to describe actions in the past. It can, for example, express the future.

Wenn ich nur früher kommen	If only I could come earlier!

könnte!

➤ The imperfect tense and the imperfect subjunctive of weak verbs are identical.

Pronoun	Imperfect/Imperfect Subjunctive	Meaning
ich	**holte**	I fetched
du	**holtest**	you fetched
er/sie/es	**holte**	he/she/it fetched
wir	**holten**	we fetched
ihr	**holtet**	you (*plural*) fetched
sie/Sie	**holten**	they/you (*polite*) fetched

➤ The imperfect subjunctive of strong verbs is formed by adding the following endings to the stem of the imperfect. If there is an **a**, **o** or **u** in this stem, an umlaut is also added to it.

Pronoun	Imperfect Subjunctive: Strong Verb Endings
ich	**-e**
du	**-(e)st**
er/sie/es	**-e**
wir	**-en**
ihr	**-(e)t**
sie/Sie	**-en**

Note that you add the **-e** to the **du** and **ihr** parts of the verb if it makes pronunciation easier, for example:

du stießest	you pushed
ihr stießet	you pushed

Pronoun	Imperfect Subjunctive	Meaning
ich	**gäbe**	I gave
du	**gäb(e)st**	you gave
er/sie/es	**gäbe**	he/she/it gave
wir	**gäben**	we gave
ihr	**gäb(e)t**	you (*plural*) gave
sie/Sie	**gäben**	they/you (*polite*) gave

➤ The imperfect subjunctive forms of the mixed verbs **brennen**, **kennen**, **senden**, **nennen**, **rennen** and **wenden** add weak verb imperfect endings to the stem of the verb, which DOES NOT change the vowel. The imperfect subjunctive forms of the remaining mixed verbs **bringen**, **denken** and **wissen** are also

the same as the imperfect with one major difference: not only does the stem vowel change, but an umlaut is also added to the **a** or **u**. However, all of these forms are rare, with the conditional tense being used much more frequently instead.

Wenn ich du wäre, würde ich rennen.

INSTEAD OF

Wenn ich du wäre, rennte ich.	If I were you, I would run.
Ich würde so etwas nie denken!	

INSTEAD OF

Ich dächte so etwas nie!	I would never think such a thing!

➪ *For more information on the **Conditional**, see page 125.*

Grammar Extra!

The pluperfect subjunctive is formed from the imperfect subjunctive of **haben** or **sein** + the past participle. This subjunctive form is frequently used to translate the English structure 'If I had done something, …'

Wenn ich Geld gehabt hätte,	If I had had money,
wäre ich gereist.	I would have travelled.

Key points

- ✔ In German, subjunctive forms are used much more frequently than in English, to express uncertainty, speculation or doubt.
- ✔ Subjunctive forms are commonly used in indirect speech and in conditional sentences.

- ✔ The present subjunctive of weak, strong and mixed verbs have the same endings.
- ✔ The imperfect tense and the imperfect subjunctive of weak verbs are identical.
- ✔ The imperfect subjunctive of strong verbs is formed by adding the endings **-e**, **-(e)st**, **-e**, **-en**, **-(e)t**, **-en** to the stem of the imperfect and often has an umlaut change.
- ✔ The imperfect subjunctive of mixed verbs is rare and the conditonal form of **würde** + infinitive is normally used instead.

The infinitive

What is the infinitive?

The **infinitive** is the 'to' form of the verb, for example, *to go*, and is the form you look up in a dictionary. It is the **-en** form of the verb in German.

Using the infinitive

➤ **zu** is used with the infinitive:

- after other verbs

Ich versuchte zu kommen.	I tried to come.

- after adjectives

Es war leicht zu sehen.	It was easy to see.
Es ist schwierig zu verstehen.	It's hard to understand.

- after nouns

Ich habe keine Zeit, zu gehen.	I don't have the time to go.
Ich habe keine Lust, heute zu arbeiten.	I don't want to work today

➤ The infinitive is used without **zu** after the following:

- modal verbs, such as **können** (meaning *to be able, can*)

Sie kann gut schwimmen.	She can swim very well.

➪ *For more information on **Modal verbs**, see page 136.*

Tip

The English *–ing* form is often translated by the German infinitive, as shown in some of the examples below.

- the verbs **lassen** (meaning *to let, to leave*), **bleiben**

(meaning *to stay*) and **gehen** (meaning *to go*)

Sie ließen uns warten.	They kept us waiting.
Sie blieb sitzen.	She remained seated.
Er ging einkaufen.	He went shopping.

- verbs of perception such as **hören** (meaning *to hear, to listen (to)*) and **sehen** (meaning *to see, to watch*)

Ich sah ihn kommen.	I saw him coming.
Er hörte sie singen.	He heard her singing.

➤ The infinitive can be used to give an order or instruction.

Bitte nicht in diesen Zug einsteigen!	Please don't board this train!

➤ It can also be used as a noun with a capital letter. It is always neuter.

rauchen = to smoke

Sie hat das Rauchen aufgegeben.	She's given up smoking.

Key points

✔ The infinitive is the 'to' form of the verb, the one you look up in a dictionary.

✔ **zu** is used with the infinitive after other verbs, adjectives and nouns.

✔ The infinitive is used WITHOUT **zu** after certain verbs, mostly modal verbs.

- ✔ The infinitive can be used to give an order or instruction.
- ✔ It can be used as a noun with a capital letter and is always neuter.

Modal verbs

What are modal verbs?
Modal verbs are used to modify or change other verbs to show such things as *ability, permission* or *necessity*. For example, *He can swim*; *May I come*?; *We ought to go*.

1 Using modal verbs

➤ In German, the modal verbs are **dürfen**, **können**, **mögen**, **müssen**, **sollen** and **wollen**.

➤ Modal verbs are different from other verbs in their conjugation, which is shown in the Verb Tables.

→ *For **Verb Tables**, see supplement.*

➤ Here are the main uses of **dürfen**:

- Meaning *to be allowed to* or *may*

Darfst du mit ins Kino kommen?	Are you allowed to/can you come to the cinema with us?

- Meaning *must not* or *may not*

Ich darf keine Schokolade essen.	I mustn't eat any chocolate.

- Expressing politeness

Darf ich?	May I?

➤ Here are the main uses of **können**:

- Meaning *to be able to* or *can*

Wir können es nicht schaffen.	We can't make it.

- Meaning *would be able to* or *could*

Könntest du morgen hinfahren?	Could you go there tomorrow?

- As a more common, informal alternative to **dürfen**, with the meaning *to be allowed to* or *can*

Kann ich/Darf ich einen Kaffee haben?	Can I/May I have a coffee?

- Expressing possibility

Das kann sein.	That may be so.
Das kann nicht sein.	That can't be true.

➤ Here are the main uses of **mögen**:

- Meaning *to like*, when expressing likes and dislikes

Magst du Schokolade?	Do you like chocolate?
Sie mögen es nicht.	They don't like it.

- Meaning *would like to*, when expressing wishes and polite requests

Möchtest du sie besuchen?	Would you like to visit her?
Möchten Sie etwas trinken?	Would you like something to drink?

- Expressing possibility or probability

Es mag sein, dass es falsch war.	It may well be that it was wrong.

➤ Here are the main uses of **müssen**:

- Meaning *to have to* or *must* or *need to*

Sie musste jeden Tag um sechs aufstehen.	She had to get up at six o'clock every day.

- Certain common, informal uses

Muss das sein?	Is that really necessary?
Den Film muss man gesehen haben.	That film is worth seeing.

Note that you can use a negative form of **brauchen** (meaning *to need*) instead of **müssen** for *don't have to* or *need not*

Das brauchst du nicht zu sagen.	You don't have to say that.

➤ Here are the main uses of **sollen**:

- Meaning *ought to* or *should*

Das sollten Sie sofort machen.	You ought to do that straight away.
Sie wusste nicht, was sie tun sollte.	She didn't know what to do. (*what she should do*)

- Meaning *to be (supposed) to* where someone else has asked you to do something

Du sollst deine Freundin anrufen.	You are to/should phone your girlfriend (*she has left a message asking you to ring*).

- Meaning *to be said to be*

Sie soll sehr reich sein.	I've heard she's very rich/ She is said to be very rich.

➤ Here are the main uses of **wollen**:

- Meaning *to want* or *to want to*

Sie will Lkw-Fahrerin werden.	She wants to be a lorry driver.

- As a common, informal alternative to **mögen**, meaning *to want* or *wish*

Willst du eins?	Do you want one?
Willst du/Möchtest du etwas trinken?	Do you Want/Would you like something to drink?

- Meaning *to be willing to*

Er will nichts sagen.	He refuses to say anything.

- Expressing something you previously intended to do

Ich wollte gerade anrufen.	I was just about to phone.

2 Modal verb forms

➤ Modal verbs have unusual present tenses:

dürfen	***können***	***mögen***
ich darf	**ich kann**	**ich mag**
du darfst	**du kannst**	**du magst**
er/sie/es darf	**er/sie/es kann**	**er/sie/es mag**

wir dürfen	**wir können**	**wir mögen**
ihr dürft	**ihr könnt**	**ihr mögt**
sie/Sie dürfen	**sie/Sie können**	**sie/Sie mögen**
müssen	***sollen***	***wollen***
ich muss	**ich soll**	**ich will**
du musst	**du sollst**	**du willst**
er/sie/es muss	**er/sie/es soll**	**er/sie/es will**
wir müssen	**wir sollen**	**wir wollen**
ihr müsst	**ihr sollt**	**ihr wollt**
sie/Sie müssen	**sie/Sie sollen**	**sie/Sie wollen**

➤ In tenses consisting of one verb part, the infinitive of the verb used with the modal comes at the end of the sentence or clause.

Sie kann sehr gut schwimmen.	She is a very good swimmer.

Grammar Extra!

In sentences with modal verbs where the other verb expresses movement, it can be dropped if there is an adverb or adverbial phrase to show movement instead.

Ich muss nach Hause.	I must go home.
Die Kinder sollen jetzt ins Bett.	The children have to go to bed now.

➪ *For more information on **Adverbs**, see page 57.*

Key points

✔ Modal verbs are used to modify the meaning of other verbs.

✔ In German, the modal verbs are **dürfen**, **können**, **mögen**, **müssen**, **sollen** and **wollen**.

✔ Modal verbs are different from other verbs in

their conjugation.

Impersonal verbs

What is an impersonal verb?

An **impersonal verb** is one that does not relate to a real person or thing and where the subject is represented by *it*, for example, *It's going to rain*; *It's ten o'clock*.

➤ In German, impersonal verbs are used with **es** (meaning *it*) and the third person singular form of the verb.

Es regnet.	It's raining.
Es gibt ein Problem.	There's a problem.

➤ Here are the most common impersonal verbs. In some of these expressions it is possible to drop the **es**, in which case a personal pronoun such as **mich** or **mir** begins the clause. For example:

Es ist mir egal, ob er mitkommt	
OR	
Mir ist egal, ob er mitkommt	I don't care if he comes with us.

➪ *For more information on **Personal pronouns**, see page 70.*

➤ These expressions are marked with a * in the list below.

•	**Es freut mich, dass/zu**	I am glad that/to.
	Es freut mich, dass du gekommen bist.	I'm pleased that you have come.
	Es freut mich, Sie in unserer Stadt begrüßen zu dürfen.	I'm pleased to welcome you to our town.
•	**Es gefällt mir.**	I like it.
	Es gefällt mir gar nicht.	I don't like it at all.
•	**Es geht mir gut/ schlecht.**	I'm fine/not too good.
•	**Es geht nicht.**	It's not possible.
•	**es geht um**	it's about
	Es geht um die Liebe.	It's about love.
•	**es gelingt mir (zu)**	I succeed (in)
	Es ist mir gelungen, ihn zu überzeugen.	I managed to convince him.
•	**es handelt sich um**	it's a question of

	Es handelt sich um Zeit und Geld.	It's a question of time and money.
•	**Es hängt davon ab.**	It depends.
	Es hängt davon ab, ob ich arbeiten muss.	It depends whether I have to work or not.
•	**Es hat keinen Zweck.**	There's no point.
•	**es ist mir egal (ob)***	it's all the same to me (if)
	Es ist mir egal, ob du kommst oder nicht.	I don't care if you come or not.
•	**es ist möglich(, dass)**	it's possible (that)
	Es is doch möglich, dass sie ihr Handy nicht dabei hat.	It's always possible she doesn't have her mobile with her.
•	**es ist nötig**	it's necessary
	Es wird nicht nötig sein, mir Bescheid zu sagen.	It won't be necessary to let me know.
•	**es ist schade(, dass)**	it's a pity (that)
	Es ist schade, dass sie nicht kommt.	It's a pity (that) she isn't coming.
•	**Es ist mir warm** OR **Es ist mir kalt***.	I'm warm OR I'm cold.
•	**Es klingelt.**	Someone's ringing the bell OR The phone is ringing.
	Es hat gerade geklingelt.	The bell just went OR The phone just rang.
•	**Es klopft.**	Someone's knocking (at the door).
•	**es kommt darauf an(, ob)**	it all depends (whether)
	Es kommt darauf an, ob ich arbeiten muss.	It all depends whether I have to work.
•	**Es lohnt sich (nicht).**	It's (not) worth it.
	Ich weiß nicht, ob es sich lohnt oder nicht.	I don't know if it's worth it or not.
•	**Es macht nichts.**	It doesn't matter.
•	**es macht nichts aus**	it makes no difference
	Macht es dir etwas aus, wenn wir morgen gehen?	Would you mind if we went tomorrow?
•	**es stimmt, dass …**	it's true that …
	Es stimmt, dass sie	It's true that she doesn't

	keine Zeit hat.	have any time.
•	**es tut mir leid(, dass) …**	I'm sorry(that) …
•	**Wie geht es (dir)?**	How are you?
•	**Mir wird schlecht*.**	I feel sick.

➤ All weather verbs are impersonal.

Infinitive	**Expression**	**Meaning**
donnern und blitzen	**es donnert und blitzt**	there's thunder and lightning
frieren	**es friert**	it's freezing
gießen	**es gießt**	it's pouring
regnen	**es regnet**	it's raining
schneien	**es schneit**	it's snowing
sein	**es ist warm/kalt**	it's cold/warm

Key points

✔ Impersonal verbs are used with **es** (meaning it) and the third person singular form of the verb.

✔ All weather verbs are impersonal.

There is/There are

➤ There are two main ways of expressing this in German.

1 Es gibt

- This is always used in the singular form and is followed by a singular or plural object in the accusative case.

Es gibt zu viele Probleme dabei.	There are too many problems involved.
Es gibt keinen besseren Wein.	There is no better wine.

- **Es gibt** is used to refer to things of a general nature.

Es gibt bestimmt Regen.	It's definitely going to rain.
Wenn wir zu spät kommen, gibt es Ärger.	If we arrive late, there'll be trouble.

- It is often used informally.

Was gibts (=gibt es) zu essen?	What is there to eat?
Was gibts?	What's wrong?, What's up?
So was gibts doch nicht!	That's impossible!

2 Es ist/es sind

- Here, the **es** simply introduces the real subject of the sentence, so if the subject is plural, **es sind** is used. The subject is in the nominative case.

Es sind kaum Leute da.	There are hardly any people there.

- Where the subject and verb swap places in the clause or sentence, the **es** is dropped.

Da sind kaum Leute.	There are hardly any people there.

Note that **es gibt** is frequently used instead of **es ist**/**es sind** in the above two examples.

- **Es ist** or **es sind** are used to refer to a temporary situation.

Es war niemand da.	There was no-one there.

- They are also used to begin a story.

Es war einmal eine Königin.	Once upon a time there was a Queen …

Key point

✔ In German there are two main ways of translating *there is/there are*: **es gibt** and **es ist**/**es sind**.

Use of **es** as an anticipatory object

➤ The object of many verbs can be a clause beginning with **dass** (meaning *that*) or an infinitive with **zu**.

Er wusste, dass wir pünktlich kommen würden.	He knew that we would come on time.
Sie fing an zu lachen.	She began to laugh.

➤ With some verbs, **es** is often used as the object to anticipate this clause or infinitive phrase.

Er hatte es abgelehnt, mitzukommen.	He refused to come.

➤ When the **dass** clause or infinitive phrase begins the sentence, **es** is not used in the main clause. Instead, it can be replaced by the pronoun **das** (meaning *that*).

Dass es Karla war, das haben wir ihr verschwiegen.	We did not tell her that it was Karla.

Note that **dass** is a subordinating conjunction and **das** is a demonstrative pronoun.

*For more information on **Subordinating conjunctions**, see page 172.*

➤ The following common verbs usually have the **es** object.

•	**es ablehnen, zu …**	to refuse to
•	**es aushalten, zu tun/ dass …** **Ich halte es nicht mehr aus, bei ihnen zu arbeiten.**	to stand doing I can't stand working for them any longer.
•	**es ertragen, zu tun/ dass …** **Ich ertrage es nicht, dass sie mir widerspricht.**	to bear doing I can't bear her contradicting me.
•	**es leicht haben, zu …** **Sie hatte es nicht leicht, sie zu überreden.**	to find it easy to She didn't have an easy job persuading them.
•	**es nötig haben, zu …**	to need to

	Ich habe es nicht nötig, mit dir darüber zu reden.	I don't have to talk to you about it.
•	**es satt haben, zu …**	to have had enough of (doing)
	Ich habe es satt, englische Verben zu lernen.	I've had enough of learning English verbs.
•	**es verstehen, zu …**	to know how to
	Sie versteht es, Autos zu reparieren.	She knows about repairing cars.

➤ The following common verbs often have the **es** object.

•	**es jemandem anhören/ansehen, dass …**	to tell by listening to/looking at someone that
	Man hörte es ihm an, dass er kein Deutscher war.	You could tell by listening to him that he wasn't German.
•	**es bereuen, zu tun/dass …**	to regret doing/that
	Ich bereue es nicht, dass ich gekommen bin.	I don't regret coming.
•	**es jemandem verbieten, zu …**	to forbid someone to
	Ihre Mutter hat es ihr verboten, dort hinzugehen.	Her mother forbade her to go there.
	es wagen zu …	to dare to
	Er wagte es nicht, ein neues Auto zu kaufen.	He didn't dare buy a new car.

Key points

✔ The object of many verbs can be a clause beginning with **dass** (meaning *that*) or an infinitive with **zu**.

✔ With some verbs, **es** is used as the object to

anticipate this clause or infinitive phrase.

✔ When the **dass** clause or infinitive phrase begins the sentence, **es** is not used in the main clause. Instead, it can be replaced by the pronoun **das** (meaning *that*).

Verbs followed by prepositions

➤ Some English verbs must be followed by prepositions for certain meanings, for example, *to wait for*, *to ask for*. This also happens in German:

sich sehnen nach	to long for
warten auf	to wait for
bitten um	to ask for

Tip

As you can see from the examples above, the preposition that is used in German is not always the same as the one that is used in English. Whenever you learn a new verb, try to learn which preposition is used after it too.

➤ As in English, using different prepositions with a verb creates completely different meanings.

bestehen	to pass (a test etc)
bestehen aus	to consist of
bestehen auf	to insist on
sich freuen auf	to look forward to
sich freuen über	to be pleased about

Note that you occasionally need to use a preposition with a German verb whose English equivalent does not have one.

diskutieren über	to discuss

➤ Prepositions used with these verbs behave like normal prepositions and affect the case of the following noun in the normal way. For instance, with verbs followed by **für** the accusative case is always used.

sich interessieren für	to be interested in
Sie interessiert sich nicht für den neuen Wagen.	She isn't interested in the new car.

➤ A verb plus preposition is not always followed by a noun or pronoun. It can also be followed by a clause containing another verb. This is often used to translate an *–ing* form in English and is dealt with in one of two ways.

- If the verbs in both parts of the sentence have the same subject, **da-** or **dar-** is added to the beginning of the preposition and the following verb becomes an infinitive used with **zu**.

Ich freue mich sehr darauf, mal wieder mit ihr zu arbeiten.	I am looking forward to working with her again.

- If the subject is not the same for both verbs, a **dass** (meaning *that*) clause is used.

Ich freue mich darauf, dass du morgen kommst.	I am looking forward to you coming tomorrow.

1 Verbs followed by a preposition + the accusative case

➤ The following list contains the most common verbs followed by a preposition plus the accusative case:

sich amüsieren über	to laugh at
Sie haben sich über ihn amüsiert.	They laughed at him.
sich ärgern über	to get annoyed about/with
sich bewerben um	to apply for
Sie hat sich um die Stelle als Direktorin beworben.	She applied for the position of director.
bitten um	to ask for
denken an	to be thinking of
Daran habe ich gar nicht mehr gedacht.	I'd forgotten about that.
denken über	to think about, hold an opinion of
Wie denkt ihr darüber?	What do you think about it?
sich erinnern an	to remember

sich freuen auf	to look forward to
sich freuen über	to be pleased about
Ich freue mich sehr über den neuen Job.	I'm very pleased about the new job.
sich gewöhnen an	to get used to
sich interessieren für	to be interested in
Sie interessiert sich sehr für Politik.	She's very interested in politics.
kämpfen um	to fight for
sich kümmern um	to take care of, see to
Kannst du dich um meine Pflanzen kümmern?	Can you see to my plants?
nachdenken über	to think about
Er hatte schon lange darüber nachgedacht.	He had been thinking about it for a long time.
sich unterhalten über	to talk about
sich verlassen auf	to rely on, depend on
Kann sie sich auf ihn verlassen?	Can she rely on him?
warten auf	to wait for

2 Verbs followed by a preposition + the dative case

➤ The following list contains the most common verbs followed by a preposition plus the dative case:

abhängen von	to depend on
Das hängt von der Zeit ab, die	That depends how much time we have left.
sich beschäftigen mit	to occupy oneself with
Sie beschäftigen sich im Moment mit dem neuen Haus.	They're busy with their new house at the moment.
bestehen aus	to consist of
leiden an/unter	to suffer from
Sie hat lange an dieser Krankheit gelitten.	She suffered from this illness for a long time.
riechen nach	to smell of
schmecken nach	to taste of
Es schmeckt nach Zimt.	It tastes of cinnamon.
sich sehnen nach	to long for
sterben an	to die of

Sie ist an Krebs gestorben.	She died of cancer.

- **teilnehmen an** — to take part in
  Du solltest am Wettbewerb teilnehmen. — You should take part in the competition.
- **träumen von** — to dream of
- **sich verabschieden von** — to say goodbye to
  Ich habe mich noch nicht von ihm verabschiedet. — I haven't said goodbye to him yet.
- **sich verstehen mit** — to get along with, get on with
  Sie versteht sich ganz gut mit ihr. — She gets on really well with her.

Key points

✔ German prepositions after verbs are often not the same as the ones used in English.

✔ Using different prepositions with a verb creates completely different meanings.

✔ German verbs occasionally use prepositions where their English equivalents don't.

✔ Prepositions used with verbs behave like normal prepositions and affect the case of the following noun.

Verbs followed by the dative case

1 Verbs with a direct and indirect object

➤ Some verbs are generally used with a direct object and an indirect object. For example, in the English sentence, *She gave me a book*, the direct object of *gave* is *a book* and would be in the accusative case in German, and *me* (= *to me*) is the indirect object and would be in the dative case in German.

Sie gab mir ein Buch.	She gave me a book.
direct object = **ein Buch**	
indirect object = **mir**	

➤ In German, as in English, this type of verb is usually concerned with giving or telling someone something, or with doing something for someone else.

Sie erzählte ihm eine Geschichte.	She told him a story.
direct object = **eine Geschichte**	
indirect object = **ihm**	

Note that the normal word order after such verbs is for the direct object to follow the indirect, EXCEPT where the direct object is a personal pronoun.

Kaufst du mir das Buch?	Will you buy me the book?
BUT	
Kaufst du es mir?	Will you buy it for me?

*For more information on **Direct** and **Indirect object pronouns**, see pages 74 and 76.*

➤ Here are some of the most common examples of verbs which are used with both a direct and an indirect object:

• **anbieten** to offer	
Sie bot ihr die Arbeitsstelle an.	She offered her the job.
• **bringen** to bring	
Bringst du mir eins?	Will you bring me one?
• **beweisen** to prove	
Können Sie es mir beweisen?	Can you prove it to me?
• **fehlen** to be absent *or* missing	
Mir fehlt das nötige Geld.	I don't have enough money.
• **geben** to give	

Gib mir das sofort!	Give me that now!
• **schenken** to give (as a present)	
Ich schenke ihr einen Computer zum Geburtstag.	I'm giving her a computer for her birthday.
• **schreiben** to write	
Schreib ihm mal einen Brief.	Write him a letter sometime.
• **zeigen** to show	
Zeig es mir!	Show me it!

2 Verbs with their object in the dative

➤ Certain verbs in German, such as **helfen** (meaning *to help*) can ONLY be followed by an object in the dative case.

➤ Here are some of the most common ones.

• **begegnen** to bump into, meet	
Er ist seinem Freund in der Stadt begegnet.	He bumped into his friend in town.
• **gehören** to belong to	
Wem gehört dieses Buch?	Whose book is this?
• **helfen** to help	
Er wollte ihr nicht helfen.	He refused to help her.
• **danken** to thank	
Ich danke dir!	Thank you!
• **schaden** to damage	
Rauchen schadet der Gesundheit	Smoking is bad for your health.
• **schmecken** to taste	
Das Essen hat ihnen gut geschmeckt.	They enjoyed the meal.
• **trauen** to trust	
Ich traue dir nicht.	I don't trust you.

Key points

✔ Some German verbs are usually used with a direct AND an indirect object.

✔ The indirect object is ALWAYS in the dative case.

✔ The normal word order after such verbs is for the direct object to follow the indirect, EXCEPT where

the direct object is a personal pronoun.

- ✔ Certain German verbs can only be followed by an object in the dative case.

The passive

What is the passive?
The **passive** is the form of the verb that is used when the subject of the verb is the person or thing that is affected by the action, for example, *I was given*, *we were told*, *it had been made*.

1 Using the passive

➤ In a normal, or *active* sentence, the subject of the verb is the person or thing that carries out the action described by the verb. The object of the verb is the person or thing that the verb happens to.

Ryan (*subject*) hit (*active verb*) me (*object*).

➤ In English, as in German, you can turn an active sentence round to make a passive sentence.

I (*subject*) was hit (*passive verb*) by Ryan (*agent*).

➤ Very often, however, you cannot identify who is carrying out the action indicated by the verb.

I was hit in the face.
The trees will be chopped down.
I've been chosen to represent the school.

2 Forming the passive

➤ In English we use the verb *to be* with the past participle (*was hit, was given*) to form the passive and the word *by* usually introduces the agent. In German the passive is formed using **werden** and the past participle, while the agent is introduced by

- **von**, for a person or organisation
- **durch**, for a thing

Das Kind wurde von einem Hund gebissen.	The child was bitten by a dog.

Die Tür wurde durch den Wind geöffnet.	The door was opened by the wind.

➪ *For more information on the **Past participle**, see page 114.*

➤ Here is the present tense of the verb **sehen** (meaning *to see*) in its passive form.

ich werde gesehen	I am seen
du wirst gesehen	you are seen
er/sie/es wird gesehen	he/she/it is seen
wir werden gesehen	we are seen
ihr werdet gesehen	you (*plural*) are seen
sie/Sie werden gesehen.	they/you (*formal*) are seen

Tip

There is/there are can be translated by a verb in the passive tense in German.

Es wird immer viel getrunken auf seiner Party.	There is always a lot of drinking at his party.

➤ You can form other tenses of the passive by changing the tense of the verb **werden**, for example, the imperfect passive.

ich wurde gesehen	I was seen

➪ *For more information on the **Imperfect tense**, see page 118.*

Tip

There is a very important difference between German and English in sentences containing an indirect object. In English we can quite easily turn a normal (active) sentence with an indirect object into a passive sentence.

Active

Someone (*subject*) gave (*active verb*) me (*indirect*

object) a book (*direct object*).

Passive

I (*subject*) was given (*passive verb*) a book (*direct object*).

In German, an indirect object can NEVER become the subject of a passive verb. Instead, the indirect object must remain in the dative case, with either the direct object becoming the subject of the passive sentence OR use of an impersonal passive construction. **Ein Buch** (*subject*) **wurde mir geschenkt**.

3 Avoiding the passive

➤ Passives are not as common in German as in English. There are three main ways that German speakers express the same idea.

- by using the pronoun **man** (meaning *they* or *one*) with a normal, active verb

Man hatte es mir schon gesagt.	I had already been told.

Note that **man** is not always translated as *they* or *one*.

Man hatte es schon verkauft.	It had already been sold.

- by using **sich lassen** plus a verb in the infinitive

Das lässt sich machen.	That can be done.

- by using an active tense where the agent of the action is known

Susi schenkte ihr ein Auto.	Susi gave her a car.

INSTEAD OF

Ihr wurde von Susi ein Auto geschenkt.	She was given a car by Susi.

Key points

- ✔ The present tense of the passive is formed by using the present tense of **werden** with the past participle.
- ✔ In German, an indirect object can NEVER become the subject of a passive verb.
- ✔ You can often avoid a passive construction by using the pronoun **man** or **sich lassen** plus an infinitive or an active tense where the agent is known.

PREPOSITIONS

What is a preposition? A **preposition** is a word such as *at, for, with, into* or *from*, which is usually followed by a noun, pronoun or, in English, a word ending in *-ing*. Prepositions show how people and things relate to the rest of the sentence, for example, She's at home; a tool for cutting grass; it's from David.

Using prepositions

➤ Prepositions are used in front of nouns and pronouns (such as *me*, *him*, *the man* and so on), and show the relationship between the noun or pronoun and the rest of the sentence. Some prepositions can be used before verb forms ending in *-ing* in English.

I showed my ticket to the inspector.
Come with me.
This brush is really good for cleaning shoes.

➪ *For more information on **Nouns** and **Pronouns**, see pages 1 and 69.*

➤ In English, a preposition does not affect the word or phrase it introduces, for example:

the inspector	to the inspector
me	with me
cleaning shoes	for cleaning shoes

➤ In German, however, the noun following a preposition must be put into the accusative, genitive or dative case.

Tip

It is important to learn each preposition with the case or cases it governs.

1 Prepositions followed by the dative case

➤ Some of the most common prepositions taking the dative case are: **aus**, **außer**, **bei**, **gegenüber**, **mit**, **nach**, **seit**, **von**, **zu**

• **aus** *out of, from*

Er trinkt aus der Flasche.	He is drinking out of the bottle.
Sie kommt aus Essen.	She comes from Essen.

• **außer** *out of; except*

Der Fahrstuhl war außer Betrieb.	The lift was out of order.
Der Patient ist jetzt außer Gefahr.	The patient is out of danger now.
Alle außer mir kamen zu spät.	All except me came too late.

• **bei** *at the home/shop/work etc of; near*

Feiern wir bei uns?	Shall we celebrate at our house?
Bei uns in Schottland ist das kein Problem.	At home in Scotland that isn't a problem.
Er ist noch beim Friseur.	He is still at the hairdresser's.
Er wohnt immer noch bei seinen Eltern.	He still lives with his parents.
Riegel ist bei Freiburg.	Riegel is near Freiburg.

Note that **bei** plus the definite article can be shortened to **beim**.

*For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

• **gegenüber** *opposite; towards*

Er wohnt uns gegenüber.	He lives opposite us.
Sie ist mir gegenüber immer sehr freundlich gewesen.	She has always been very friendly towards me.

Note that when used as a preposition, **gegenüber** is placed AFTER a pronoun, but can be placed BEFORE or AFTER a noun.

• **mit** *with*

Er ging mit seinen Freunden spazieren.	He went for a walk with his friends.

• **nach** *after; to*

Nach zwei Stunden kam er wieder.	He returned two hours later.
Sie ist nach London gereist.	She went to London.
Ihrer Sprache nach ist sie Süddeutsche.	From the way she talks I would say she is from southern Germany.

Note that when **nach** means *according to*, as in the last example, it can be placed AFTER the noun.

• **seit** *since; for (of time)*

Seit er krank ist, spielt er nicht mehr Fußball.	He's stopped playing football since he became ill.

Note that after **seit**, meaning *for*, we use the present tense in German, but the perfect tense in English.

Ich wohne seit zwei Jahren in Frankfurt.	I've been living in Frankfurt for two years.
Sie arbeitet seit acht Jahren bei uns.	She's been working for us for eight years.

*For more information on **Tenses used with** **seit** see page 94.*

• **von** *from; about; by (when used in the passive tense)*

Von Berlin sind wir weiter nach Krakau gefahren.	From Berlin we went on to Krakow.
Ich weiß nichts von ihm.	I know nothing about him.
Sie ist von unseren Argumenten überzeugt worden.	She was convinced by our arguments.

*For more information on the **Passive**, see page 150.*

Note that **von** can be used as a common alternative to the genitive case.

Die Mutter von diesen Mädchen ist Künstlerin.	The mother of these girls is an artist.
Sie ist eine Freundin von Alexander.	She is a friend of Alexander's.

*For more information on the **Genitive case**, see page 11.*

• **zu** *to; for*

Er ging zum Arzt.	He went to the doctor's.
Wir sind zum Essen eingeladen.	We're invited for a meal.

Note that **zu** plus the definite article can be shortened to **zum** or **zur**.

*For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

Grammar Extra!

Some of the above prepositions are also used as separable verb prefixes, that is the part at the beginning of a separable German verb.

aushalten	to endure
Ich halte es nicht mehr aus.	I can't stand it any longer.
(jemandem) beistehen	to stand by (somebody)
Er stand seinem Freund bei.	He stood by his friend.
gegenüberstehen	to have an attitude towards
Er steht ihnen kritisch gegenüber.	He has a critical attitude towards them.
jemanden mitnehmen	to give somebody a lift
Nimmst du mich bitte mit?	Will you give me a lift, please?
nachmachen	to copy
Sie macht mir alles nach.	She copies everything I do.
zumachen	to shut
Mach die Tür zu!	Shut the door!

➪ *For more information on **Separable verbs**, see page 109.*

Key points

✔ **gegenüber**, **aus**, **bei**, **mit**, **nach**, **seit**, **von**, **zu**, **außer** are the most common prepositions used with the dative case.

✔ Each of them has several different possible meanings, depending on the context they are used in.

✔ **aus**, **nach**, **mit**, **bei**, **gegenüber** and **zu** can also be used as separable verb prefixes.

2 Prepositions followed by the accusative case

➤ The most common prepositions taking the accusative case are: **durch**, **entlang**, **für**, **gegen**, **ohne**, **um**, **wider**

Tip

If you want an easy way to remember which prepositions take the accusative case, you could think of the word DOGWUF, which can stand for the prepositions **durch ohne gegen wider um für**.

• **durch** *through*

Sie guckte durch das Loch.	She looked through the hole.
Durch Zufall trafen sie sich wieder.	They met again, by chance.

• **entlang** *along*

Die Kinder kommen die Straße entlang.	The children are coming along the street.

ⓘ Note that **entlang** comes AFTER the noun in this meaning.

• **für** *for; to*

Ich habe es für dich getan.	I did it for you.
Das ist für ihn sehr wichtig.	That is very important to him.
Was für eins hat er?	What kind (of one) does he have?
Was für einen Wagen hat sie?	What kind of car does she have?
Was für Äpfel sind das?	What kind of apples are they?

• **gegen** *against; around*

Stelle es gegen die Wand.	Put it against the wall.
Haben Sie etwas gegen Heuschnupfen?	Have you got something for hayfever?
Wir sind gegen vier angekommen.	We arrived at around four o'clock.

• **ohne** *without*

Ohne sie gehts nicht.	It won't work without her.

• **um** *(a)round, round about; at (with time); by (with quantity)*

Der Bahnhof liegt um die Ecke.	The station is round the corner.
Es fängt um neun Uhr an.	It begins at nine.
Es ist um zehn Euro billiger.	It is cheaper by ten euros.

Note that **um** is used after certain verbs.

Sie baten um ein bisschen mehr Zeit.	They asked for a bit more time.
Es handelt sich um dein Benehmen.	It's a question of your behaviour.

*For more information on **Verbs followed by prepositions**, see page 145.*

• **wider** *contrary to, against*

Das geht mir wider die Natur.	That's against my nature.

Grammar Extra!

Some of the above prepositions are also used as separable verb prefixes, that is the part at the beginning of a separable German verb.

durchmachen	
Sie hat viel durchgemacht in ihrem Leben.	She's been through a lot in her life.
entlanggehen	
Wir gingen die Straße entlang.	We went along the street.

um and **wider** are also used as separable or inseparable verb prefixes (variable verb prefixes), depending on the verb and meaning.

umarmen	*inseparable*	to hug
Er hat sie umarmt.		He gave her a hug.
umfallen	*separable*	to fall over
Sie ist umgefallen.		She fell over.
widersprechen	*inseparable*	to go against
Das hat meinen Wünschen		That went against my wishes.

widersprochen.		
(sich) widerspiegeln	*separable*	to reflect
Der Baum spiegelt sich im Wasser wider.		The tree is reflected in the water.

➪ *For more information on **Separable verbs** and **Inseparable verbs**, see page 109.*

Key points

✔ **durch**, **entlang**, **für**, **gegen**, **ohne**, **um**, and **wider** are the most common prepositions used with the accusative case.

✔ Most of them have several different possible meanings, depending on the context they are used in.

✔ **durch**, **entlang** and **gegen** can also be used as separable verb prefixes.

✔ **um** and **wider** can also be used as variable verbal prefixes.

3 Prepositions followed by the accusative or the dative case

➤ There are a number of prepositions which can be followed by the accusative or the dative case. You use:

- the accusative case when there is some movement towards a different place
- the dative case when a location is described rather than movement, or when there is movement within the same place

➤ The most common prepositions in this category are: **an**, **auf**, **hinter**, **in**, **neben**, **über**, **unter**, **vor**, **zwischen**

➤ You use **an**:

• with the accusative case

Die Lehrerin schrieb das Wort an die Tafel.	The teacher wrote the word on the board.
Ich habe einen Brief an meine Mutter geschrieben.	I wrote a letter to my mother.
Ich ziehe im Sommer an die Küste.	In the summer I move to the coast.

• with the dative case

Das Wort stand an der Tafel.	The word was written on the blackboard.
Wir treffen uns am Bahnhof.	We're meeting at the station.

Note that **an** plus the definite article can be shortened to **am**.

➪ *For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

➤ You use **auf**:

• with the accusative case

Stell die Suppe bitte auf den Tisch.	Put the soup on the table please.
Wir fahren morgen aufs Land.	We're going to the country tomorrow.
Er warf einen Blick auf das Buch.	He glanced at the book.

Note that **auf** plus the definite article can be shortened to **aufs**.

➪ *For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

• with the dative case

Die Suppe steht auf dem Tisch.	The soup's on the table.
Auf dem Land ist die Luft besser.	The air is better in the country.

➤ You use **hinter**:

• with the accusative case

Stell dich hinter deinen Bruder.	Stand behind your brother.

• with the dative case

Sie saß hinter mir.	She was sitting behind me.

➤ You use **in**:

• with the accusative case

Sie ging ins Zimmer.	She entered the room.
Er wollte nicht in die Schule gehen.	He didn't want to go to school.

• with the dative case

Was hast du heute in der Schule gemacht?	What did you do at school today?
Im Zimmer warteten viele Leute auf ihn.	A lot of people were waiting for him in the room.

Note that **in** plus the definite article can be shortened to **im** or **ins**.

*For more information on **Shortened forms of prepositions**, see page 165.*

➤ You use **neben**:

• with the accusative case

Stell dein Rad neben meines.	Put your bike next to mine.

• with the dative case

Dein Rad steht neben meinem.	Your bike's next to mine.

➤ You use **über**:

• with the accusative case

Zieh den Pullover über deinen Kopf!	Pull the jumper over your head!

Sie ging quer über das Feld.	She went across the field.
Flugzeuge dürfen nicht über dieses Gebiet fliegen.	Planes are not allowed to fly over this area.

• with the dative case

Die Lampe soll über dem Tisch hängen.	The lamp should hang over the table.

Note that when **über** means *about*, it is always followed by the accusative case, NOT the dative.

Wir haben viel über sie gesprochen.	We talked about her a lot.

➤ You use **unter**:

• with the accusative case

Sie stellte sich unter den Baum.	She (came and) stood under the tree.

• with the dative case

Sie lebte dort unter Freunden.	She lived there among friends.

➤ You use **vor**:

• with the accusative case

Stell den Stuhl vor das Fenster.	Put the chair in front of the window.

• with the dative case

Auf dem Foto stand sie vor dem Haus.	In the photo she was standing in front of the house.
Ich war vor ihm da.	I was there before him.
Vor dem Krankenhaus links abbiegen.	Turn left at the hospital.

➤ You use **zwischen**:

• with the accusative case

Er legte es zwischen die beiden Teller.	He put it between the two plates.

• with the dative case

Das Dorf liegt zwischen den Bergen.	The village lies between the mountains.

➤ Each of these prepositions can also be used with verbs and are then called prepositional objects.

abhängen von + *dative*	to depend on
Das hängt von dir ab.	That depends on you.
schmecken nach + *dative*	to taste of
Der Nachtisch schmeckt nach Zimt.	The dessert tastes of cinnamon.

➤ When **auf** or **an** is used in this way, the case used depends on the verb – it's much easier to learn such examples together with the case which follows them.

sich verlassen auf + *accusative*	to depend on
Ich verlasse mich auf dich.	I'm depending on you.
bestehen auf + *dative*	to insist on
Wir bestehen auf sofortiger Bezahlung.	We insist on immediate payment.
glauben an + *accusative*	to believe in
Sie glaubt an ihre Schwester.	She believes in her sister.
leiden an + *dative*	to suffer from
Er leidet an einer tödlichen Krankheit.	He is suffering from a terminal illness.
sich freuen auf + *accusative*	to look forward to
Ich freue mich auf die Sommerferien.	I'm looking forward to the summer holidays.
warten auf + *accusative*	to wait for
Er wartet jeden morgen auf den Bus.	Every morning he waits for the bus.

➪ *For more information on **Verbs with prepositional objects**, see page 145.*

Grammar Extra!

Some of the above prepositions are also used as separable or inseparable verb prefixes.

anrechnen	*separable*	to charge for
Das wird Ihnen später angerechnet.	You'll be charged for that later.	
aufsetzen	*separable*	to put on
Er setzte sich die Mütze auf.	He put his cap on.	
überqueren	*inseparable*	to cross
Sie hat die Straße überquert.	She crossed the street.	

➪ *For more information on **Separable verbs** and **Inseparable verbs**, see page 109.*

Key points

- ✔ **an**, **auf**, **hinter**, **in**, **neben**, **über**, **unter**, **vor** and **zwischen** are the most common prepositions which can be followed by the accusative or dative case.
- ✔ Most of them have several different possible meanings, depending on the context they are used in.
- ✔ Each of them can also be prepositional objects of certain verbs.
- ✔ Many of them can also be used as verb prefixes.

4 Prepositions followed by the genitive case

➤ The following are some of the more common prepositions which take the genitive case:

außerhalb, **infolge**, **innerhalb**, **statt**, **trotz**, **um … willen**,

während, wegen

- **außerhalb** *outside*

Es liegt außerhalb der Stadt.	It's outside the town.

- **infolge** *as a result of*

Infolge des starken Regens kam es zu Überschwemmungen.	As a result of the heavy rain, there were floods.

- **innerhalb** *within, inside*

Ich schaffe das nicht innerhalb der gesetzten Frist.	I won't manage that within the deadline.

- **statt** *instead of*

Sie kam statt ihres Bruders.	She came instead of her brother.

- **trotz** *in spite of*

Trotz ihrer Krankheit ging sie jeden Tag spazieren.	In spite of her illness, she went for a walk every day.

- **um … willen** *for … sake, because of …*

Ich komme um deinetwillen.	I'm coming for your sake.
Tun Sie das bitte um meiner Mutter willen.	Please do it, for my mother's sake.

- **während** *during*

Was hast du während der Ferien gemacht?	What did you do during the holidays?

- **wegen** *because of, on account of*

Wegen des schlechten Wetters wurde die Veranstaltung abgesagt.	The event was cancelled because of bad weather.

Note that **statt**, **trotz**, **während** and **wegen** can also be followed by the dative case.

Statt dem Abendessen musste ich arbeiten.	Instead of having dinner, I had to work.

Trotz allem will ich weiterstudieren.	In spite of everything, I want to continue studying.
Während dem Vortrag schlief er ein.	He fell asleep during the lecture.
Wegen mir musste sie früh nach Hause.	She had to go home early because of me.

Grammar Extra!

There are some other prepositions which take the genitive case.

• **beiderseits** *on both sides of*

Beiderseits des Flusses gibt es ein Ufer.	On both sides of the river there is a river bank.

• **diesseits** *on this side of*

Diesseits der Grenze spricht man Polnisch und Deutsch.	On this side of the border Polish and German are spoken.

• **… halber**

Vorsichtshalber nehme ich heute meinen Regenschirm mit.	To be on the safe side I'm taking an umbrella today.
Sicherheitshalber verschließt er die Tür.	For safety's sake he locks the door.

• **hinsichtlich** *with regard to*

Hinsichtlich Ihrer Beschwerde habe ich Ihren Brief an die zuständigen Behörden geschickt.	With regards to your complaint, I have passed on your letter to the relevant authorities.

• **jenseits** *on the other side of*

Das Dorf liegt 2 km jenseits der Grenze.	The village is 2km on the other side of the border.

Grammar Extra!

Special forms of the possessive and relative pronouns are used with **wegen**.

- **meinetwegen**

Hat er sich meinetwegen so aufgeregt?	Did he get so upset on my account?

- **deinetwegen**

Ich ging nicht deinetwegen nach Hause.	I didn't go home because of you.

- **seinetwegen**

Ihr müsst seinetwegen nicht auf euren Urlaub verzichten.	You don't have to do without your holiday for his sake.

- **ihretwegen**

Wir sind ihretwegen früher gegangen.	We went earlier because of them *or* her.

- **unsertwegen**

Sie musste unsertwegen Strafe zahlen.	She had to pay a fine because of us.

- **euretwegen**

Euretwegen durfte er nicht mitspielen.	Because of you he wasn't allowed to play.

- **Ihretwegen**

Sollte es Ihretwegen Probleme geben, dann gehen wir alle nach Hause.	Should you cause any problems, then we'll all go home.

➪ *For more information on **Possessive pronouns** and **Relative pronouns**, see pages 80 and 86.*

Key points

✔ **außerhalb**, **beiderseits**, **diesseits**, **… halber**, **hinsichtlich**, **infolge**, **innerhalb**, **jenseits**, **statt**, **trotz**, **um … willen**, **während** and **wegen** are the most common prepositions which take the genitive case.

✔ **statt**, **trotz**, **während** and **wegen** can also take the dative case.

✔ Special forms of possessive and relative pronouns are used with **wegen**.

5 Shortened forms of prepositions

➤ After many German prepositions, a shortened or contracted form of the definite article can be merged with the preposition to make one word.

auf + das	→	**aufs**
bei + dem	→	**beim**
zu + der	→	**zur**

➪ *For more information on the **Definite article**, see page 25.*

➤ This can be done with all of the following prepositions:

Preposition	**+ das**	**+ den**	**+ dem**	**+ der**
an	**ans**		**am**	
auf	**aufs**			
bei			**beim**	
durch	**durchs**			
für	**fürs**			
hinter	**hinters**	**hintern**	**hinterm**	
in	**ins**		**im**	
über	**übers**	**übern**	**überm**	
um	**ums**			
unter	**unters**	**untern**	**unterm**	

vor	**vors**	**vorm**	
von		**vom**	
zu		**zum**	**zur**

Er ging ans Fenster.	He went to the window.
Wir waren gestern am Meer.	We were at the seaside yesterday.
Er ist beim Friseur.	He's at the hairdresser's.
Wir gehen heute Abend ins Kino.	We're going to the cinema tonight.
Im Sommer lese ich gern im Garten.	In the summer I like reading in the garden.
Es ging immer ums Thema Geld.	It was always about the subject of money.
Der Hund lief unters Auto.	The dog ran under the car.
Der Ball rollte untern Tisch.	The ball rolled under the table.
Die Katze lag unterm Schreibtisch.	The cat lay under the desk.
Er erzählte vom Urlaub.	He talked about his holiday.
Sie fährt zum Bahnhof.	She drives to the station.
Er geht zur Schule.	He goes to school.

➤ The following shortened forms are normally only used in informal, spoken German:

• **aufs**

Wir fahren morgen aufs Land.	We're going to the country tomorrow.

• **durchs**

Sie flog durchs Abitur.	She failed her A-levels.

• **fürs**

Das ist fürs neue Haus.	That's for the new house.

• **hinters, hintern, hinterm**

Er lief hinters Auto.	He ran behind the car.
Stell es hintern Tisch.	Put it behind the table.
Es liegt hinterm Sofa.	It's behind the couch.

• **übers, übern, überm**

Sie legten ein Brett übers Loch.	They put a board over the hole.
Man muss das übern Kopf ziehen.	You have to pull it over your head.
Überm Tisch hängt eine Lampe.	There's a lamp hanging over the table.

• **unters, untern, unterm**

Die Katze ging unters Bett.	The cat went under the bed.
Der Ball rollte untern Tisch.	The ball rolled under the table.
Der Hund liegt unterm Tisch.	The dog is lying under the table.

• **vors, vorm**

Stell den Stuhl vors Fenster.	Put the chair in front of the window.
Er stand vorm Spiegel.	He stood in front of the mirror.

Note that if you want to stress the article in a sentence, shortened forms are NOT used.

In dem Anzug kann ich mich nicht sehen lassen!	I can't go out in that suit!

➤ Shortened forms of prepositions can also be used:

• with personal pronouns representing inanimate objects, that is objects which are not living things

Sie war damit zufrieden.	She was satisfied with that.
Er hat es darauf angelegt, dass er die beste Note kriegen würde.	He was determined to get the best grade.

*For more information on **Personal pronouns**, see page 70.*

Key points

✔ It is often possible to combine the definite article and a preposition to create a shortened form.

✔ Some of these shortened forms should only be used in spoken German.

CONJUNCTIONS

What is a conjunction?
A **conjunction** is a linking word such as *and, but, if* and *because*, that links two words or phrases of a similar type, for example, *Diane and I have been friends for years.* Conjunctions also link two clauses, for example, *I left because I was bored.* In German there are two types of conjunctions, called **coordinating conjunctions** and **subordinating conjunctions**.

Coordinating conjunctions

➤ **aber**, **denn**, **oder**, **sondern** and **und** are the most important coordinating conjunctions.

- **aber** *but*

Wir wollten ins Kino, aber wir hatten kein Geld.	We wanted to go to the cinema, but we had no money.

Note that you can't use **aber** after a negative to mean *not … but …*: you must use **sondern**.

- **aber** *however*

Ich wollte nach Hause, er aber wollte nicht mit.	I wanted to go home; however, he wouldn't come.

Note that when **aber** means 'however', it comes between the subject and verb in the clause.

- **denn** *because, since*

Wir wollten heute fahren, denn montags ist weniger Verkehr.	We wanted to travel today because there is less traffic on Mondays.

- **oder** *or*

Sie hatte noch nie Whisky oder Schnaps getrunken.	She had never drunk whisky or schnapps.
Willst du eins oder hast du vielleicht keinen Hunger?	Do you want one or aren't you hungry?

- **sondern** *but*

Es kostet nicht zwanzig, sondern fünfzig Euro.	It doesn't cost twenty euros, but fifty.

- **und** *and*

Susi und Oliver	Susi and Oliver
Er ging in die Stadt und kaufte sich ein neues Hemd.	He went into town and bought himself a new shirt.

➤ If you use a coordinating conjunction, you do not put the verb at the end of the clause beginning with the conjunction.

Wir wollten ins Theater, aber wir hatten kein Geld. **wir** = subject **hatten** = verb	We wanted to go to the theatre but we had no money.

Coordinating conjunctions with two parts

➤ German, like English, also has conjunctions which have more than one part. Here are the most common ones.

- **sowohl … als (auch)** *both … and*

The verb is plural, whether the individual subjects are singular or plural.

Sowohl sein Vater als auch seine Mutter haben sich darüber gefreut.	Both his father and mother were pleased about it.
Sowohl unser Lehrkörper als auch unsere Schüler haben teilgenommen.	Both our staff and pupils took part.

- **weder … noch** *neither … nor*

With this conjunction, the verb is plural unless both subjects are singular, as shown below.

Weder die Lehrer noch die Schüler haben recht.	Neither the teachers nor the pupils are right.
Weder du noch ich würde es schaffen.	Neither you nor I would be able to do it.

When **weder … noch** is used to link clauses, the subject and verb are swapped round in BOTH clauses.

Weder mag ich ihn noch respektiere ich ihn.	I neither like nor respect him.

- **nicht nur … sondern auch** *not only … but also*

The verb agrees in number with the subject nearest to it.

Nicht nur sie, sondern auch ich habe es gehört.	They weren't the only ones to hear it – I heard it too.

When **nicht nur … sondern auch** is used to link clauses, the subject and verb are only swapped round in the first clause, not the second, BUT if **nicht nur** does not begin the clause, word order is normal.

Nicht nur ist sie geschickt, sondern auch intelligent.

OR

Sie ist nicht nur geschickt, sondern auch intelligent.	She is not only skilful but also intelligent.

- **entweder … oder** *either … or*

The verb agrees in number with the subject nearest to it. When **entweder … oder** is used to link clauses, the subject and verb are only swapped round in the first clause, not the second.

Entweder du oder Karla muss es getan haben.	It must have been either you or Karla.
Entweder komme ich vorbei, oder ich rufe dich an.	I'll either drop in or I'll give you a ring.

Key points

- ✔ A conjunction is a word that links two words or clauses of a similar type, or two parts of a sentence.
- ✔ **Aber**, **denn**, **oder**, **sondern** and **und** are the most important coordinating conjunctions.
- ✔ Single-word coordinating conjunctions do not change the order of the subject and the verb in the clause.

Subordinating conjunctions

➤ The subordinate clause is always separated from the main clause by a comma. It is called a subordinate clause because it cannot stand on its own without the other clause in the sentence and is linked to this by a subordinating conjunction.

Sie ist zu Fuß gekommen, weil der Bus zu teuer ist.	She came on foot because the bus is too dear.
MAIN CLAUSE	= **Sie ist zu Fuß gekommen**
SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	= **weil der Bus zu teuer ist**

Note that the verb comes at the end of the subordinate clause.

➤ **als**, **da**, **damit**, **dass**, **ob**, **obwohl**, **während**, **wenn**, **weil**, **um … zu**, and **ohne … zu** are some of the most important subordinating conjunctions.

- **als** *when*

Es regnete, als ich in Glasgow ankam.	It was raining when I arrived in Glasgow.

- **da** *as, since*

Da du nicht kommen willst, gehe ich allein.	Since you don't want to come, I'll go on my own.

- **damit** *so (that)*

Ich sage dir das, damit du es weißt.	I'm telling you so that you know.

- **dass** *that*

Ich weiß, dass du besser in Mathe bist als ich.	I know (that) you're better at maths than me.

- **ob** *if, whether*

Sie fragt, ob du auch kommst.	She wants to know if you're coming too.

- **obwohl** *although*

Sie blieb lange auf, obwohl sie müde war.	She stayed up late although she was tired.

- **während** *while*

Sie sah fern, während sie ihre Hausaufgaben machte.	She was watching TV while she was doing her homework.

- **wenn** *when, whenever, if*

Wenn ich nach Hause komme, erst mal.	When I get home, the first thing I'm going to do is have a shower.
Wenn er anruft, sag mir Bescheid.	If he calls, tell me.

Tip

If translating *when* in a sentence which describes a single, completed action in the past, you use **als**, NOT **wenn**. You use **wenn** for single, momentary actions in the present or future.

- **weil** because

Morgen komme ich nicht, weil ich keine Zeit habe.	I'm not coming tomorrow because I don't have the time.

- **um … zu** in order to …

Um früh aufzustehen, musste sie den Wecker stellen.	In order to get up early, she had to set the alarm.

Note that **zu** is inserted between a separable verb and its prefix.

*For more information on **Separable verbs**, see page 109.*

- **ohne … zu** without …

Er verließ das Haus, ohne ein Wort zu sagen.	He left the house without saying a word.

Note that **um … zu** and **ohne … zu** are always used with infinitive constructions.

Note that with the subordinating conjunctions **als**, **da**, **damit**, **dass**, **ob**, **obwohl**, **während**, **wenn**, **weil**, **um … zu**, and **ohne … zu**, the subordinate clause can come BEFORE the main clause, as seen in the example with **da**. When this happens, the verb and subject of the main clause swap places.

*For more information on the **Infinitive**, see page 134.*

➤ In tenses which only have one verb part, such as the present and imperfect, the verb comes last in the subordinate clause.

Wenn er mich sah, lief er davon.	Whenever he saw me, he ran away.

➤ In tenses which have two verb parts, such as the perfect tense, it is the form of **haben**, **sein** or **werden** which comes last in the subordinate clause, after the past participle.

Sie will nicht ausgehen, weil sie noch nichts gegessen hat.	She doesn't want to go out because she hasn't eaten anything yet.

*For more information on the **Perfect** and **Imperfect tenses**, see pages 113 and 118.*

➤ Any modal verb, for example **mögen** (meaning *to like*) and **können** (meaning *can, to be able to*), used in a subordinate clause is placed last in the clause.

Sie wusste nicht, ob sie kommen konnte.	She didn't know if she could come.

*For more information on **Modal verbs**, see page 136.*

Key points

✔ Subordinating conjunctions link the main clause and subordinating clause in a sentence.

✔ After subordinating conjunctions, verbs go to the end of the clause.

- ✔ **Als**, **da**, **damit**, **dass**, **ob**, **obwohl**, **während**, **wenn**, **weil**, **um … zu**, and **ohne … zu** are some of the most important subordinating conjunctions.
- ✔ The subordinate clause can come before the main clause. When this happens, the verb and subject of the main clause swap places.
- ✔ In tenses which only have one verb part, the verb comes last in the subordinate clause. In tenses which have two verb parts, **haben**, **sein** or **werden** comes last in the subordinate clause, after the past participle.

WORD ORDER

➤ Here is a ready-reference guide to the key points of German word order.

1 Main clauses

➤ In a main clause the subject comes first and is followed by the verb, as in English.

Seine Mutter *(subject)* **trinkt** *(verb)* *Whisky.*	His mother *(subject)* drinks *(verb)* whisky.

➤ In tenses with more than one verb element, such as the perfect tense and the passive, **haben**, **sein** or **werden** comes after the subject, and the past participle or infinitive goes to the end of the clause.

Sie hat mir nichts gesagt.	She told me nothing.
Er ist spät angekommen.	He arrived late.
Es wurde für ihn gekauft.	It was bought for him.

➤ A direct object usually follows an indirect object, except where the direct object is a personal pronoun.

Ich gab dem Mann *(indirect object)* **das Geld** *(direct object)*.	I gave the man the money.
Ich gab ihm *(indirect object)* **das Geld** *(direct object)*.	I gave him the money.
BUT	
Ich gab es *(direct object)* **ihm** *(indirect object)*.	I gave it to him.

Note that the indirect object can also be placed last for emphasis, providing it is NOT a pronoun.

Er gab das Geld seiner Schwester.	He gave the money to his sister.

*For more information on **Direct** and **Indirect objects**, see pages 9 and 13.*

➪ *For more information on* ***Using direct*** *and* ***Indirect object pronouns****, see pages 74 and 76.*

➤ As a general rule, adverbs are placed next to the words to which they refer.

- Adverbs of time often come first in the clause, but this is not fixed.

Gestern gingen wir ins Theater.
OR
Wir gingen gestern ins Theater. — We went to the theatre yesterday.

- Adverbs of place can also come first in the clause when you want to emphasize something.

Dort haben sie Fußball gespielt. — That's where they played football.

- Adverbs of manner comment on verbs and so are likely to come immediately after the verb they refer to.

Sie spielen gut Fußball. — They play football well.

- Where there is more than one adverb, a useful rule of thumb is: 'TIME, MANNER, PLACE'

Wir haben gestern gut hierhin gefunden. — We found our way here all right yesterday.
gestern = adverb of time
gut = adverb of manner
hierhin = adverb of place

- If there is a pronoun object (a word like *her, it, me* or *them*) in the clause, it comes before all adverbs.

Sie haben es gestern sehr billig gekauft. — They bought it very cheaply yesterday.

➤ The normal word order in a main clause is subject followed by verb. The subject can be replaced as the first element by any of the words and phrases below. In such cases, the verb is the second element in the clause.

- an adverb

Gestern sind wir ins Theater gegangen.	We went to the theatre yesterday.

- a direct or indirect object

Seinen Freunden wollte er es nicht zeigen.	He wouldn't show it to his friends.

- an infinitive phrase

Ihren Freunden zu helfen, hat sie nicht versucht.	She didn't try to help her friends.

- another noun or pronoun

Deine Schwester war es.	It was your sister.
Sie war es.	It was her.

- a past participle

Geraucht hatte er nie.	He had never, ever smoked.

- a phrase with a preposition

In diesem Haus bin ich auf die Welt gekommen.	I was born in this house.

- a clause which acts as the object of the verb

Was mit ihm los war, haben wir nie herausgefunden.	We never found out what was wrong with him.

- a subordinate clause

Nachdem ich ihn gesehen hatte, ging ich nach Hause.	I went home after seeing him.

2 Subordinate clauses

➤ A subordinate clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun (a word such as **der**, **die** or **dessen**) or a subordinating conjunction (a word such as **da**, **als** or **ob**).

Die Kinder, die wir gesehen haben	The children whom we saw …
…	
Da sie nicht schwimmen wollte, ist	As she didn't want to swim, she

sie nicht mitgekommen.	didn't come.

➤ The subject follows the conjunction or relative pronoun.

Ich weiß nicht, ob er kommt.	I don't know if he's coming.

➤ The main verb ALMOST ALWAYS goes to the end of a subordinate clause.

Als ich nach Hause kam, war ich ganz müde.	When I came home I was really tired.

Grammar Extra!

The exceptions to this are:

- A clause which normally begins with **wenn**, but from which it can be left out.

Findest du mein Handy, so ruf mich bitte an.	
INSTEAD OF	
Wenn du mein Handy findest, ruf mich bitte an.	If you find my mobile, please give me a call.

- Indirect speech without the conjunction **dass** (meaning *that*).

Sie meint, sie werde es innerhalb einer Stunde schaffen.	
INSTEAD OF	
Sie meint, dass sie es innerhalb einer Stunde schaffen wird.	She thinks (that) she will manage it inside an hour.

➤ The rules applying to the order of articles, nouns, adjectives, adverbs, direct and indirect objects are the same in subordinate clauses as in main clauses, EXCEPT that all these words are placed between the subject of the clause and the relevant verb part.

MAIN CLAUSE:	
Sie ist gestern mit ihrer Mutter in die Stadt gefahren.	She went into town with her mother yesterday.
SUBORDINATE CLAUSE:	
Da sie gestern mit ihrer Mutter in die Stadt gefahren ist…	Since she went into town with her mother yesterday…

Tip

The rule 'time, manner, place' applies equally to subordinate clauses, EXCEPT that the verb goes to the end.

➪ *For more information on **Subordinate clauses**, see page 193.*

➤ Word order in the imperative, in direct and indirect speech and in verbs with separable prefixes is covered in the relevant chapters:

➪ *For more information on the **Imperative**, see page 105.*

➪ *For more information on **Direct** and **Indirect speech**, see page 129.*

➪ *For more information on **Verbs with separable prefixes**, see page 109.*

NEGATIVES

What is a negative?
A **negative** question or statement is one which contains a word such as *not*, *never* or *nothing* and is used to say that something is not happening, is not true or is absent.

1 Using negatives

➤ In English we use words like *not*, *no*, *nothing* and *never* to show a negative.

I'm not very pleased.
Dan never rang me.
Nothing ever happens here!
There's no milk left.

➤ In German, if you want to make something negative, you generally add **nicht** (meaning *not*) or **nie** (meaning *never*) next to the phrase or word referred to.

Ich will nicht mitgehen.	I don't want to come.
Sie fährt nie mit ans Meer.	She never comes with us to the seaside.

➤ Here is a list of the other common German negatives:

- **nein** *no*

Nein, ich habe keine Zeit.	No, I don't have any time.

- **nichts** *nothing*

Sie hat nichts damit zu tun.	She has nothing to do with it.

- **nicht mehr** *not … any more, no longer*

Ich rauche nicht mehr.	I don't smoke any more/ I no longer smoke.

Sie geht nicht mehr hin.	She doesn't go any more.

☑ Note that **nicht** and **mehr** always appear next to each other.

kein *none*

Keiner meiner Freunde wollte kommen.	None of my friends wanted to come.
Wo ist die Milch? – Es ist keine mehr da.	Where is the milk? – There is none left.

Tip

Nicht applies to verbs. Remember that when you want to make a negative statement about a noun, you must use **kein**. If you want to say *I don't drink milk any more,* you would say **Ich trinke keine Milch mehr**.

➪ *For more information on the* ***Indefinite article in negative sentences*** *and on* ***Indefinite pronouns****, see pages 36 and 82.*

- **niemand** *nobody* or *no one*

Es war niemand im Büro.	There was nobody in the office.

➪ *For more information on* ***Indefinite pronouns****, see page 82.*

- **nirgendwo or nirgends** *nowhere, not … anywhere*

Nirgends sonst gibt es so schöne Blumen.	Nowhere else will you find such beautiful flowers.
Hier gibts nirgendwo ein Schwimmbad.	There isn't a swimming pool anywhere here.

- **weder noch** *neither of two things*

Karotten oder Erbsen? – Weder noch, danke.	Carrots or peas? – Neither, thanks.

- **weder … noch** *neither … nor*

Weder Sabina noch Oliver	Neither Sabina nor Oliver are coming

kommen zur Party.	to the party.

➪ *For more information on* ***Coordinating conjunctions with two parts****, see page 170.*

- **… auch nicht** *neither have I, nor does he, nor are we* etc

Ich mag ihn nicht. – Ich auch nicht!	I don't like him. – Neither do I!
Er war noch nie in Spanien. – Sie auch nicht!	He's never been to Spain. – Neither has she!

2 Word order with negatives

➤ In a sentence with only one verb part, such as the present tense, **nicht** and **nie** usually come directly after the verb. However, in direct questions, the negative word comes after the subject.

Du arbeitest nicht.	You're not working.
BUT	
Arbeitest du nicht?	Aren't you working?

➤ In a sentence with two verb parts, such as the perfect tense and the passive, **haben**, **sein** or **werden** come after the subject and the negative word usually comes directly before the past participle or infinitive. The position of the negative doesn't change in direct questions.

Sie haben es nicht gemacht.	You haven't done it.
Haben Sie es nicht gemacht?	Haven't you done it?

➤ You can change the emphasis in a sentence by moving the position of the negative. For example, **nie** can be placed at the start of the sentence. The subject and verb then swap positions.

Nie waren sie glücklicher gewesen.	They had never been happier.
Nie im Leben hatte er so etwas gesehen.	Never in his life had he seen such a thing.

➤ **nicht** comes at the end of a negative imperative, except if the verb is separable, in which case it comes before the separable prefix.

Iss das nicht!	Don't eat that!
Setzen Sie sich nicht!	Don't sit down!
BUT	
Geh nicht weg!	Don't go away!

➤ **nicht** + the indefinite article **ein** is usually replaced by forms of **kein**.

Gibt es keine Plätzchen?	Aren't there any biscuits?
Kein einziger Student hatte die Arbeit gemacht.	Not a single student had done the work.

➪ *For more information on the **Indefinite article**, see page 35.*

➤ To contradict a negative statement, **doch** is used instead of **ja**, to mean *yes*.

Du kommst nicht mit. – Doch, ich komme mit.	You're not coming. – Yes I am.
Das ist nicht wahr. – Doch!	That isn't true! – Yes it is!

➤ **nicht … sondern** (meaning *not … but*) is used to correct a wrong idea or false impression.

Nicht Susi, sondern ihr Bruder war es.	It wasn't Susi, it was her brother.

Key points

✔ A statement is usually made negative by adding **nicht** (meaning *not*) or **nie** (meaning *never*).

✔ The most common German negatives are: **nicht**, **nein**, **nie**, **nichts**, **nicht mehr**, **kein**, **niemand**, **nirgends** or **nirgendwo**, **weder noch**, **weder … noch** and … **auch nicht**.

✔ **Nicht** comes at the end of a negative imperative, except if the verb is separable, in which case it

comes before the separable prefix.

- ✔ **Nicht** + the indefinite article **ein** is usually replaced by forms of **kein**.
- ✔ To contradict a negative statement, **doch** is used instead of **ja**, to mean *yes*.
- ✔ **Nicht … sondern** (meaning *not … but*) is used to correct a wrong idea or false impression.

QUESTIONS

What is a question?
A **question** is a sentence which is used to ask someone about something and which in English normally has the verb in front of the subject. Question words such as *why*, *where*, *who*, *which* or *how* are also used to ask a question.

How to ask a question in German

1 The basic rules

➤ There are three ways of asking direct questions in German:

- by changing round the order of words in a sentence
- by adding **nicht**, **nicht wahr**, **oder** or **doch** (meaning *isn't it*) to a sentence
- by using a question word

2 Asking a question by changing word order

➤ Many questions are formed in German by simply changing the normal word order of a sentence. You swap round the subject and verb, and add a question mark.

Magst *(verb)* **du** *(subject)* **ihn?**	Do you like him?
Gehst *(verb)* **du** *(subject)* **ins Kino?**	Do you go to the cinema? OR Are you going to the cinema?

➤ In tenses with more than one verb, such as the perfect tense and the passive, **haben**, **sein** or **werden** come BEFORE the subject, and the past participle or infinitive goes to the end of the clause.

Haben Sie es gesehen?	Did you see it?

3 Asking a question by adding nicht, nicht wahr, oder or doch

➤ A statement can be made into a question by adding **nicht**, **nicht wahr**, **oder** or **doch**, in the same way as *isn't it, won't you* etc is added in English. You'd normally expect the answer to such questions to be a simple *yes* or *no*.

Das stimmt, nicht wahr?	That's true, isn't it?
Das Essen ist fertig, nicht?	The food's ready, isn't it?
Sie machen das, oder?	They'll do it, won't they?
Das schaffst du doch?	You'll manage, won't you?

➤ When a question is put in the negative, **doch** can be used to answer it more positively than **ja**.

Glaubst du mir nicht? – Doch!	Don't you believe me? – Yes, I do!

4 Asking a question by using a question word

➤ A question word is a word like *when* or *how* that is used to ask for information. In German, these words are a mixture of interrogative adverbs, pronouns and adjectives. Listed below are the most common question words:

wie? (*how?*)	**wo?** (*where?*)	**wem?** (*whom?*)
was? (*what?*)	**welcher?** (*which?*)	**wessen?** (*whose?*)
wann? (*when?*)	**wer?** (*who?*)	**warum?** (*why?*)

Note that **wer** means *who*, NOT *where*.

➤ When questions are formed with interrogative adverbs like **wann**, **wo**, **wie** and **warum**, normal word order changes and the subject and verb swap places.

Wann ist er gekommen?	When did he come?
Wo willst du hin?	Where are you off to?
Wie haben Sie das gemacht?	How did you do that?
Warum ist sie so spät aufgestanden?	Why did she get up so late?

Tip

Remember to use **woher** and **wohin** when direction is involved.

Woher kommst du?	Where do you come from?
Wohin fahren Sie?	Where are you going?

➤ When questions are formed with interrogative pronouns and adjectives, word order is normal if the interrogative pronoun or adjective is the subject of the verb at the beginning of the clause.

Wer *(subject)* **hat** *(verb)* **das gemacht?**	Who did that?

➤ If the interrogative pronoun or adjective is NOT the subject of

the verb at the beginning of the clause, the subject and verb swap places.

Wem hast *(verb)* **du** *(subject)* **es geschenkt?**	Who did you give it to?

➪ *For more information on* ***Interrogative pronouns****, see page 89.*

Note that in indirect questions, that is questions following verbs of *asking* and *wondering*, the verb comes at the end of the question.

Sie fragte, ob du mitkommen wolltest.	She asked if you wanted to come.

Key points

- ✔ There are three basic ways of asking direct questions in German: changing the word order; adding **nicht**, **nicht wahr**, **oder** or **doch**; and using a question word.
- ✔ When a question is put in the negative, **doch** can be used to answer it more positively than **ja**.
- ✔ The most common question words are the interrogative adverbs **wann**, **wo**, **wie** and **warum**, the interrogative pronouns **was**, **wer**, **wem** and **wessen**, and the interrogative adjective **welcher**.

NUMBERS

0	**null**
1	**eins**
2	**zwei**
3	**drei**
4	**vier**
5	**fünf**
6	**sechs**
7	**sieben**
8	**acht**
9	**neun**
10	**zehn**
11	**elf**
12	**zwölf**
13	**dreizehn**
14	**vierzehn**
15	**fünfzehn**
16	**sechzehn**
17	**siebzehn**
18	**achtzehn**
19	**neunzehn**
20	**zwanzig**
21	**einundzwanzig**
22	**zweiundzwanzig**
30	**dreißig**
40	**vierzig**
50	**fünfzig**
60	**sechzig**
70	**siebzig**
80	**achtzig**
90	**neunzig**
a hundred	**hundert**
one hundred	**einhundert**
101	**hunderteins**
102	**hundertzwei**
121	**hunderteinundzwanzig**
200	**zweihundert**
a thousand	**tausend**
one thousand	**eintausend**
1001	**tausendeins**
2000	**zweitausend**
100,000	**hunderttausend**
1,000,000	**eine Million**

Note that **zwo** often replaces **zwei** in speech, to distinguish it clearly from **drei**.

Tip

In German, spaces or full stops are used with large numbers where English uses a comma. Decimals are written with a comma instead of a full stop.

1,000,000	**1.000.000** *or* **1 000 000**
7.5 (*seven point five*)	7,5 (**sieben Komma fünf**)

1st	1.	**der erste**
2nd	2.	**der zweite**
3rd	3.	**der dritte**
4th	4.	**der vierte**
5th	5.	**der fünfte**
6th	6.	**der sechste**
7th	7.	**der siebte**
8th	8.	**der achte**
9th	9.	**der neunte**
10th	10.	**der zehnte**
11th	11.	**der elfte**
12th	12.	**der zwölfte**
13th	13.	**der dreizehnte**
14th	14.	**der vierzehnte**
15th	15.	**der fünfzehnte**
16th	16.	**der sechzehnte**
17th	17.	**der siebzehnte**
18th	18.	**der achtzehnte**
19th	19.	**der neunzehnte**
20th	20.	**der zwanzigste**
21st	21.	**der einundzwanzigste**
22nd	22.	**der zweiundzwanzigste**
30th	30.	**der dreißigste**
40th	40.	**der vierzigste**
50th	50.	**der fünfzigste**
60th	60.	**der sechzigste**
70th	70.	**der siebzigste**
80th	80.	**der achtzigste**
90th	90.	**der neunzigste**
100th	100.	**der hundertste**
101st	101.	**der hunderterste**

102nd	102.	**der hundertzweite**
121st	121.	**der hunderteinundzwanzigste**
200th	200.	**der zweihundertste**
1000th	1000.	**der tausendste**
1001st	1001.	**der tausenderste**
2000th	2000.	**der zweitausendste**
100,000th	100 000.	**der hunderttausendste**
1,000,000th	1 000 000.	**der millionste**

Tip

When these numbers are used as nouns, they are written with a capital letter.

Sie ist die Zehnte.	She's the tenth.

half	½	**halb, die Hälfte**
third	⅓	**das Drittel**
two thirds	⅔	**zwei Drittel**
quarter	¼	**das Viertel**
three quarters	¾	**drei Viertel**
one and a half	1½	**anderthalb, eineinhalb**
two and a half	2½	**zweieinhalb**

BEISPIELE	**EXAMPLES**
Sie hat zwei Autos.	She has two cars.
Er ist zwanzig Jahre alt.	He is twenty years old.
Sie wohnt im dritten Stock.	She lives on the third floor.
Er hat am 31. August Geburtstag.	His birthday is on the 31st of August.
Ich brauche anderthalb Stunden, um nach Hause zu kommen.	I need an hour and a half *or* one and a half hours to get home.
Sie aß zwei Drittel von dem Kuchen.	She ate two thirds of the cake.

Note that ordinal numbers (**erste**, **zweite**, and so on) are declined according to the number, case and gender of the noun.

Ich habe gerade mein erstes Auto gekauft.	I've just bought my first car.
Sie kam zum zweiten Mal mit Verspätung an.	She arrived late for the second time.

DIE ZEIT	**THE TIME**
Wie spät ist es? *or* **Wie viel Uhr ist es?**	What time is it?

Es ist …	It's …
Mitternacht *or* **null Uhr** *or* **vierundzwanzig Uhr** *or* **zwölf Uhr**	midnight *or* twelve o'clock
zehn (Minuten) nach zwölf *or* **null Uhr zehn**	ten (minutes) past twelve
Viertel nach zwölf *or* **null Uhr fünfzehn**	quarter past twelve
halb eins *or* **null Uhr dreißig**	half past twelve
zwanzig (Minuten) vor eins *or* **null Uhr vierzig**	twenty (minutes) to one
Viertel vor eins *or* **drei viertel eins** *or* **null Uhr fünfundvierzig**	quarter to one
ein Uhr	one o'clock
zehn (Minuten) nach eins *or* **ein Uhr zehn**	ten (minutes) past one
Viertel nach eins *or* **ein Uhr fünfzehn**	quarter past one
halb zwei *or* **ein Uhr dreißig**	half past one
zwanzig (Minuten) vor zwei *or* **ein Uhr vierzig**	twenty (minutes) to two
Viertel vor zwei *or* **drei viertel zwei** *or* **ein Uhr fünfundvierzig**	quarter to two
zehn (Minuten) vor zwei *or* **ein Uhr fünfzig**	ten (minutes) to two
zwölf Uhr	twelve o'clock (midday)
halb eins *or* **zwölf Uhr dreißig**	half past twelve
ein Uhr *or* **dreizehn Uhr**	one o'clock
halb fünf *or* **sechzehn Uhr dreißig**	half past four
zehn Uhr *or* **zweiundzwanzig Uhr** *or* **zwoundzwanzig Uhr**	ten o'clock

Um wie viel Uhr?	At what time?
Wann?	**When?**
morgen um halb drei	tomorrow at half past two
um drei Uhr (nachmittags)	at three (pm)
kurz vor zehn Uhr	just before ten o'clock
gegen vier Uhr (nachmittags)	around four o'clock (in the afternoon)
erst um halb neun	not until half past-eight
ab neun Uhr	from nine o'clock onwards
morgen früh	tomorrow morning
morgen Abend	tomorrow evening
DAS DATUM	**THE DATE**
WOCHENTAGE	**DAYS OF THE WEEK**
Montag	Monday
Dienstag	Tuesday
Mittwoch	Wednesday
Donnerstag	Thursday
Freitag	Friday
Samstag	Saturday
Sonntag	Sunday
Wann?	**When?**
Montag	(on) Monday
montags	(on) Mondays
jeden Montag	every Monday
letzten Dienstag	last Tuesday
nächsten Freitag	next Friday
Samstag in einer Woche *or* **in acht Tagen**	a week on Saturday
Samstag in zwei Wochen	two weeks on Saturday
MONATE	**MONTHS**
Januar	January
Februar	February

März	March
April	April
Mai	May
Juni	June
Juli	July
August	August
September	September
Oktober	October
November	November
Dezember	December

Wann?	**When?**
im Dezember	in December
im April	in April
nächsten Januar	next January
letzten August	last August
Anfang/Ende September	at the beginning/ end of September
Der Wievielte is heute?	What's the date today?
Welches Datum haben wir heute?	
Heute ist …	It's …
der zwanzigste März	the twentieth of March
der Zwanzigste	the twentieth
Heute haben wir …	It's …
den zwanzigsten März	the twentieth of March
den Zwanzigsten	the twentieth
Am Wievielten findet es statt?	When does it take place?
am ersten April …	… on the first of April
am Ersten …	… on the first
(am) Montag, den ersten April *or*	on Monday, the first of April *or*
Montag, den 1. April	April 1st
JAHRESZEITEN	**SEASONS**
im Winter	in winter
im Sommer	in summer

im Herbst	in autumn
im Frühling	in spring

NÜTZLICHE VOKABELN	**USEFUL VOCABULARY**
Wann?	**When?**
heute	today
heute Morgen	this morning
heute Nachmittag	this afternoon
heute Abend	this evening
(im Jahr(e)) 2015	in 2015
Wie oft?	**How often?**
jeden Tag	every day
alle zwei Tage	every other day
einmal in der Woche/pro Woche	once a week
zweimal pro Woche	twice a week
einmal im Monat/pro Monat	once a month
Wann ist das passiert?	**When did it happen?**
am Morgen/Vormittag	in the morning
morgens/vormittags	in the mornings
am Abend	in the evening
abends	in the evenings
gestern	yesterday
gestern Abend	yesterday evening
vorgestern	the day before yesterday
vor einer Woche	a week ago
vor zwei Wochen	two weeks ago
letztes Jahr	last year
Wann passiert das?	**When is it going to happen?**
morgen	tomorrow
morgen früh	tomorrow morning
übermorgen	the day after tomorrow
in zwei Tagen	in two days
in einer Woche	in a week
in vierzehn Tagen/zwei Wochen	in two weeks

nächsten Monat	next month
nächstes Jahr	next year

Note that to talk about the year in which something happens, you don't use **in** in German.

Das findet 2016 statt.	That's taking place in 2016.
Sie wurde 1990 geboren.	She was born in 1990.
Ich ging 2001 für ein Jahr nach Deutschland.	I went to Germany for a year in 2001.

SOME COMMON DIFFICULTIES

General problems

➤ You can't always translate German into English and English into German word for word. While occasionally it is possible to do this, often it is not. For example:

- Sentences which contain a verb and preposition in English might NOT contain a preposition in German.

jemanden/etwas ansehen	to look at somebody/something
jemandem/etwas zuhören	to listen to somebody/something

- However, many sentences which contain a verb and preposition in German DO contain a preposition in English.

sich interessiern für	to be interested in
denken über	to think about

➤ Remember that German prepositions are of two types:

- Some are only ever used with one case, such as **gegen** (accusative), **bei** (dative) and **außerhalb** (genitive). For all of these it is useful to learn the preposition and its case by heart.
- The second type are used either with the accusative or the dative, according to whether movement from one place to another is involved or not. The translation of the same preposition from the last group can change according to the case being used.

Sie schrieb einen Brief an ihren Bruder.	She wrote a letter to her brother.
Wir treffen uns am Bahnhof.	We're meeting at the station.

➪ *For more information on **Prepositions**, see page 153.*

➤ A word which is plural in English may not be in German.

eine Brille	glasses, spectacles
eine Schere	scissors
eine Hose	trousers

☑ Note that they are only used in the plural in German to mean more than one pair, for example, **zwei Hosen** = two pairs of trousers.

➤ In English, you use's to show who or what something belongs to; in German you generally either use the genitive case or **von** + the dative case.

das Auto meiner Schwester	
OR	
das Auto von meiner Schwester	my sister's car

➪ *For more information on the **Genitive case**, see page 11.*

➤ German punctuation differs from English in several ways.

- Decimal places are always shown by a comma, NOT a full stop.

3,4 (drei Komma vier)	3.4 (three point four)

- Large numbers are separated by means of a space or a full stop, NOT a comma.

20 000	
OR: **20.000 (zwanzigtausend)**	20,000 (twenty thousand)

- Subordinate clauses are always separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma.

Er bleibt gesund, obwohl er zu viel trinkt.	He stays healthy, even though he drinks too much.

➪ *For more information on **Subordinate clauses**, see page 177.*

- When two main clauses are linked by **und** (meaning *and*) or **oder** (meaning *or*), no comma is required.

Wir gehen ins Kino oder wir bleiben zu Hause.	We'll go to the cinema or stay at home.

Specific problems

1 Nouns with capital letters

➤ Unlike English, ALL German nouns start with a capital letter, not just proper names.

der Tisch	the table
die Politikerin	the politician
die Königin	the Queen

Note that this also applies to verbs being used as nouns.

Sie hat ihr Können bewiesen.	She has proved her ability.

2 Three forms of you

➤ In English we have only one way of saying *you*. In German, there are three words: **du**, **ihr** and **Sie**. You use:

- the familiar **du** if talking to one person you know well, such as a friend, someone younger than you or a relative

Kommst du mit ins Kino?	Are you coming to the cinema?

- the familiar **ihr** if talking to more than one person you know well.

Also, was wollt ihr heute Abend machen?	So, what do you want to do tonight?

- the formal or polite **Sie** if talking to one or more people you do not know so well, such as your teacher, your boss or a stranger

Was haben Sie gemacht?	What did you do?

3 -ing

➤ Although English sometimes uses parts of the verb *to be* to form the present tense of other verbs (for example, *I am listening*, *she's talking*), German NEVER uses the verb **sein** in this way. Instead, it uses the normal present tense of the verb.

Ich spiele Tennis.	I play tennis. OR I am playing tennis.

4 To be

➤ The verb *to be* is generally translated by **sein**.

Es ist spät.	It's late.
Das ist nicht möglich.	That's not possible.

➤ When you are talking about the physical position of something you can use **liegen**. You may also come across **sich befinden** in more formal contexts.

Wo liegt/befindet sich der Bahnhof?	Where's the station?

➤ In certain set phrases which describe how you are feeling or a state you are in, the verb **haben** is used.

Hunger haben	to be hungry
Durst haben	to be thirsty
Angst haben	to be afraid
unrecht haben	to be wrong
recht haben	to be right

Note that to say *I am hot* or *I am cold* etc, you use a personal pronoun in the dative case followed by **sein**.

Mir ist heiß.	I am hot.	
NOT		**Ich bin heiß.**
Ihr is kalt.	She is cold.	
NOT		
Sie ist kalt.		

➤ When talking about your health, use the following forms of the verb **gehen**.

Wie geht es dir/Ihnen?	How are you?
Es geht mir gut	
OR	
Mir geht es gut.	I'm fine.

5 It

➤ There are three ways of saying *it* in German: **er**, **sie** and **es**. These correspond to the three different genders, masculine, feminine and neuter.

Wo ist der Wagen? – Er steht da drüben.	Where is the car? – It's over there.
Ich finde meine Uhr nicht. Hast du sie gesehen?	I can't find my watch. Have you seen it?
Was hältst du von meinem Haus? – Es ist ganz schön.	What do you think of my house? – it's really nice.

➪ *For more information on **Gender**, see page 3.*

6 Date and time

➤ When talking about a particular day or date, use the preposition **an** + the dative case in the following constructions:

Ich fahre am Montag nach Hause.	I'm going home on Monday.
Sie wurde am Dienstag, den 1. April aus dem Krankenhaus entlassen.	She was discharged from hospital on Tuesday, the 1st of April.
Meine Nichte hat am 6. September Geburtstag.	My niece's birthday is on the 6th of September.

➤ When stating the time of a particular event, use the preposition **um** + the accusative case in the following construction.

Ich bin um 9 Uhr aufgestanden.	I got up at 9 o'clock.
Der Zug ist um 22.30 Uhr abgefahren.	The train left at 10.30 hours.

➪ *For more information on **Prepositions**, see page 153.*

7 There is, there are

➤ Both *there is* and *there are* are translated by **es gibt**.

Hier gibt es ein schönes Freibad.	There's a lovely open-air pool here.
In Stuttgart gibt es viele Parks.	There are lots of parks in Stuttgart.

8 The imperfect of modal verbs

➤ Modal verbs never have an umlaut in the imperfect tense.

können (*can, to be able to*)	**konnte**
müssen (*must, to have to*)	**musste**
mögen (*to like*)	**mochte**
dürfen (*to be allowed to*)	**durfte**
sollen (*to ought to*)	**sollte**
wollen (*to want*)	**wollte**

➪ *For more information on **Modal verbs**, see page 136.*

9 Er/sie/es parts of strong verbs in the imperfect

➤ You do NOT add a **–t** to the **er/sie/es** parts of the imperfect tense of strong verbs.

er/sie/es ging	he/she/it went
NOT	
er/sie/es gingt	
er/sie/es sang	he/she/it sang
NOT	
er/sie/es sangt	

➪ *For more information on the **Imperfect tense**, see page 118.*

10 Inseparable verbs in the perfect tense

➤ Inseparable verbs have no **ge-** added to beginning of the past participle in the perfect tense.

Das habe ich schon bezahlt.	I've already paid for that.
Er hat sich endlich entschlossen.	He's finally decided.

➪ *For more information on **Inseparable verbs**, see page 109.*

11 Can, to be able to

➤ If you want to say *could*, meaning *was able to*, you use **konnte**, the imperfect form of **können**, you do NOT use the conditional form **könnte**.

Sie konnte nicht kommen.	She couldn't make it.
Er konnte das einfach nicht.	He just wasn't able to do it.

ALPHABET

➤ The German alphabet is pronounced differently from the way it is pronounced in English. Use the list below to help you sound out the letters.

A, a	[a:]	(ah)	
Ä, ä	[ɛ:]	(eh)	
B, b	[be:]	(bay)	
C, c	[ʦe:]	(tsay)	
D, d	[de:]	(day)	
E, e	[e:]	(ay)	
F, f	[ɛf]	(ef)	
G, g	[ge:]	(gay)	
H, h	[ha:]	(hah)	
I, i	[i:]	(ee)	
J, j	[jɔt]	(yot)	
K, k	[ka:]	(kah)	
L, l	[ɛl]	(el)	
M, m	[ɛm]	(em)	
N, n	[ɛn]	(en)	
O, o	[o:]	(oh)	
Ö, ö	[ø]	(ö)	like ö in 'ökonomisch'
P, p	[pe:]	(pay)	
Q, q	[ku:]	(koo)	
R, r	[ɛr]	(air)	
S, s	[ɛs]	(es)	
T, t	[te:]	(tay)	
U, u	[u:]	(oo)	
Ü, ü	[ʏ:]	(ü)	like ü in 'über'
V, v	[fau]	(fow)	
W, w	[ve:]	(vay)	
X, x	[iks]	(ix)	
Y, y	[ʏpsilɔn]	(üpsilon)	like 'ü' in 'über'
Z, z	[tsɛt]	(tset)	

MAIN INDEX

a 25, 29, 35
aber 67, 168
about 155, 160
abstract nouns 27
according to 154
accusative case **9**, 15, 26, 42, 84, 86, 102, 153
adjectival nouns 50, 51
adjective + verb combinations 111
adjective endings 42
adjectives 1, **40**
adjectives describing nationality 51
adjectives preceded by dative case 48
adjectives taken from place names 51
adjectives used as nouns 50
adverb + verb combinations 111
adverbs **57**
adverbs of degree 59
adverbs of manner 65
adverbs of place **60**, 65
adverbs of time 58, 65
adverbs with irregular comparatives and superlatives 64
agreement of relative pronouns 86
agreement of adjectives 40, 41
all 34
alle 31, 34
als 36, 53, 62, 130, 172, 173
alternatives to the imperative 108
am 159, 165

an 25, 35
an 30, 78, 159, 161, 165
and 168
ans 165
any 25
arbeiten: imperfect tense 120
articles 1, **25**
as … as 53, 62
asking a question by adding **nicht**, **nicht wahr**, **oder** or **doch** 182
asking a question by changing word order 182
asking a question by using a question word 183
at 153
at the home etc of 154
auch + imperative 107
… auch nicht 180
auf 78, 79, 148, 159, 161, 162, 165
aufs 159, 165, 166
aus 78, 79, 153
außer 153, 154
außerhalb 163
äußerst 56
auxiliary verbs 113, 123
avoiding the passive **152**
base form of a verb 91
because 168
bei 78, 153, 154, 156, 165
beide 31, 32, 33
beides 31, 33
beim 154, 165, 166
bleiben + infinitive 116, 134
both … and 170
brauchen 137
brennen 101
bringen 101
bringen: imperfect tense 122
but 168

by 155, 157
can 75, 136
cases **9**
collective nouns 34
comma 186
comparative adverbs **62**
comparative of adjectives **53**
comparatives and superlatives of adverbs **62**
comparison 40
compound adverbs 60
compound nouns **7**
conditional **125**, 130
conjunctions **168**
contracted form of the definite article 165
contrary to 157
coordinating conjunctions with two parts **170**
coordinating conjunctions **168**
could you … 107
could 136
countries 28
dabei 78
dadurch 78
dafür 78
dahin 60
damit 78, 172
danach 78
daneben 78
daran 78
darauf 78
daraus 78
darin 78
darüber 78
darunter 78
das 16, 27, 42, 86, 143
dass 129, 143, 146, 172
dates **189**
dative case **12**, 13, 15, 26, 42, 84, 102, 153

davon 78
days of the week 3, **189**
dazu 78
dazwischen 78
declension 1
definite article 9, 11, 12, 14, 16, **25**, 26, 32, 40, 90
dein 34, 38, 80
deiner 81
dem 16, 86
demonstrative adjectives 29, 31, 32
demonstrative pronouns 69, 143
den 9, 16, 86
denen 86
denken 101
denken: imperfect tense 122
denken: present subjunctive 131
denn 67, 168
der 9, 16, 27, 86
deren 86
derjenige 34
derselbe 34
des 42
describing words see **adjectives**
dessen 86
dich 74, 84, 102
die 16, 27, 42, 86
dies 34
diese 31, 32, 34
diesen 33
dieser 31, 32
dieses 31, 32, 34
different types of articles **25**
dir 76, 84, 102
direct object 9, 86
direct object pronoun 74, 75, 77, 84, 108
direct questions 89, 180, 184
direct speech 129
doch 67
'doing' word see **verbs**

dorthin 60
du 70
durch 78, 150, 156, 157, 158, 165
durchs 165, 166
dürfen 136
each 29
each other 85
ein 9, 36, 37, 43
einander 85
eine 14, 83
einem 12, 76, 83
einen 9, 74, 83
einer 83
ein(e)s 83
einige 31, 32, 46
either … or 170
emphasizers **67**
entweder … oder 170
er 70, 72, 73
es 70, 72, 73, 74
es gibt 142
es ist/es sind 142
etwas 46
euch 74, 76, 84, 102
euer 38, 80
eu(e)re 81
everything 82
feminine 1, 40, 45
feminine nouns 1, 4, 16, 18, 72
for 153, 155, 157
foreign nouns 3
forming plurals **16**
forming the conditional 125
forming the future tense 123
forming the imperative 105
forming the imperfect subjunctive 131
forming the imperfect tense of mixed verbs 121
forming the imperfect tense

of strong verbs 120
forming the imperfect tense of weak verbs 119
forming the passive 150
forming the past participle 114
forming the perfect tense 113
forming the pluperfect tense 127
forming the present subjunctive 131
forming the present tense of mixed verbs 100
forming the present tense of reflexive verbs 102
forming the present tense of strong verbs 97
forming the present tense of weak verbs 94
forms of the imperative 105
fractions 6
from 79, 153, 155
für 30, 78, 156, 157, 165
fürs 165, 166
future tense **123**
ganz 34
ge- 109, 114, 115
gegen 156, 157
gegenüber 153, 154
gehen: perfect tense 117
genauso … wie 53
gender 1, 22
gender of abbreviations 8
gender of compound nouns 7
gender of infinitives 6
gender of nouns **3**
genitive case 27, 86, 153, 155
genitive forms of relative pronouns 87
genitive singular 23, 24
gern 64
giving orders and

instructions see **imperative**
gleich 48
haben or sein? **116**
he 69, 70, 72
her 70, 74
her- 79
herauf 79
heraus 79
herein 79
hers 54, 80, 81
herself 84, 102
him 69, 74
himself 84, 102
hin 60, 79
hinauf 79
hinaus 79
hinein 79
hinter 10, 13, 158, 159, 165
his 34, 37, 80, 81
hoch 47, 56
höchstens 63
höher 56
how? 183
how adverbs are formed **57**
how adverbs are used **57**
how to ask a question in German **182**
I 69, 70
if 129, 130, 172
ihm 76
ihn 74
ihnen 76
Ihnen 76
ihr 38, 70, 71, 76, 80
Ihr 38, 80
ihrer 81
Ihrer 81
im 160, 165
immer 62
imperative **105**

imperative of verbs with separable prefixes 107
imperfect subjunctive of mixed verbs 132
imperfect subjunctive of strong verbs 132
imperfect tense **118**
impersonal verbs **139**
in 30, 78, 79, 159, 160, 165
in 79
indefinite article 25, **35**, 40, 180
indefinite article in negative sentences **36**
indefinite pronouns 69, **82**
indirect object 13, 76, 102
indirect object pronouns **76**, 77, 106
indirect questions 89
indirect speech 129, 177
infinitive 75, 91, **134**
infinitive + verb combinations 111
infinitive + **zu** 145
infinitive used as noun 135
-ing 48, 91, 134, 145, 153, 194
ins 160, 165
inseparable prefixes **109**
interrogative pronouns 87, **89**
into 10, 13, 79, 153
irgendein 39, 43
irgendjemand 82
irgendwelche 32, 39
irregular verbs 91
it 72, 74
its 37, 81
itself 84, 102
je … desto 62
je … umso 62
jede 31, 32
jemand 82
jene 31, 32
kein 36, 37, 43, 179

keine 36, 37, 82
kennen 101
können 75, 134, 136
lassen + infinitive 134
least 55, 63
lieber 64
linking words see **conjunctions**
main clauses 172, **175**, 178
making adjectives agree **42**
mal 67
mal + imperative 107
man 70, 72, 73, 152
manch 46
manche 31, 32, 33
masculine 1, 40, 45
masculine nouns 3, 9, 72
me 74
mehr 46, 56, 64
mein 38, 80
meiste 56
meistens 63
mich 74, 84, 102
mine 69, 80
mir 76, 84, 102
mit 78, 153, 154
mixed declension 43
mixed verbs 91
modal verb + verb of movement 138
modal verb forms 138
modal verb in subordinate clause 173
modal verbs 75, 77, 136
modal verbs + infinitive 134
mögen 136
months 3, 29, **189**
more 53
more and more 62
most 55, 63
müssen 136, 137

my 37
myself 84, 102
nach 78, 153, 154
nächste 56
naming words **see nouns**
nationality 36
neben 78, 159, 160
negatives **179**
nein 179
neither 180
neither … nor 170, 180
neuter 1, 40, 45
neuter nouns 6, 72
never 36, 179
nicht 179, 180
nicht ein 37
nicht mehr 179
nicht nur … sondern auch 170
nichts 179
nicht so … wie 53, 62
nicht … sondern 181
nie 179, 180
niemand 82, 180
nirgends 180
nirgendwo 180
nobody 82, 180
no longer 179
nominative case **9**, 15, 26
none 82, 179
no one 82, 180
not 36, 179
not … any 82
not … anybody 82
not … any more 179
not as … as 53, 62
not … anywhere 180
not … but 181
nothing 69, 179
not only … but also 170
noun + verb combinations 111

nouns **1**, 16
nouns: case 15
nouns of measurement and quantity 20
nouns with more than one gender 8
nouns with no ending in the plural 17
nowhere 60, 180
numbers 5, 47, **186**
ob 172
object 84
object pronouns 69
obwohl 172
oder 168
of mine 81
of yours 81
ohne 156, 157
ohne … zu 172, 173
on 79
one 74
one another 85
oneself 102
our 37
ours 80, 81
ourselves 84, 102
out of 153, 154
participles as adjectives 48, 50
passive 73, **150**
passive verb + indirect object 151
past participle 113, 114
past participle of inseparable verbs 115
past participle of mixed verbs 115
past participle of strong verbs 114
past participle of weak verbs 114
perfect tense 74, 77, **113**, 118
perfect tense of reflexive verbs 116
perfect tense of separable

verbs 115
personal pronouns 69, 74, 77, 84, 167
personal pronouns: after prepositions **78**
personal pronouns: direct object **74**
personal pronouns: indirect object **76**
personal pronouns: subject **70**
pluperfect subjunctive 131
pluperfect tense **127**
plural 2, 40, 45
position of verb in subordinate clause 173, 177
possessive adjectives 14, 37, 38, 39, 43, 80
possessive pronouns 34, 69, **80**, 84
possessives 47
prefix combinations with **sein** 111
preposition + adjective + noun 45
prepositional objects 161
prepositions 15, 78, **153**
prepositions expressing movement 79
prepositions followed by the accusative case 156
prepositions followed by the accusative or the dative case 158
prepositions followed by the dative case 153
prepositions followed by the genitive case 162
present 91
present participle 48
present tense 74, **93**
present tense of auxiliary verbs 114
pronouns used for emphasis 85
pronouns 1, 33, **69**, 86, 153
proper nouns **24**
questions **182**

reflexive pronoun 102
reflexive pronoun + direct object 104
reflexive pronoun + preposition 85
reflexive pronouns 69, **84**
reflexive verbs **102**
relative clauses 86
relative pronouns 69, **86**, 88
reported speech 129
seasons 3, **190**
sein 9, 15, 38, 80, 107
sein: imperfect tense 121
seiner 81
seit 153, 155
seit + imperfect tense 118, 127
seit + perfect tense 94, 113
seit + present tense 94
seitdem + imperfect tense 118, 127
seitdem + perfect tense 94, 113
selber 85
selbst 85
selbst wenn 130
separable prefixes 107, 109, 156, 158
separable verb prefixes 115, 158
she 70, 72
shortened forms of prepositions 165
shortened forms of the definite article 30
sich 84, 102
sie 70, 72, 73, 74
Sie 70, 71, 74
simple past tense 74
since 155
singular 2, 40, 45
so … wie 53, 62
solch 46
solche 31, 32
sollen 136, 137

some unusual plurals **19**
some 25
somebody 82
someone 69, 82
something 82
sondern 168
sowohl … als (auch) 170
statt 163
stem of a verb 91
strong declension **44**
strong verbs 91
subject 9, 84
subject pronouns 69
subjunctive **129**, 130
subordinate clause 172, 177, 178
subordinating conjunctions 143, **172**
superlative adverbs **63**
superlative of adjectives **55**
tense 91
than 53, 62
that 69, 86
the more … the more 62
the 25
their 38
theirs 80, 81
them 69, 74
themselves 84, 102
there is/there are **142**, 151
there 60
they 69, 70, 72
this 69
those 69
through 157
time **188**
time, manner, place 176, 178
time phrases 34
to 154, 155, 157
to form of the verb 134
towards 154
trotz 163

über 78, 159, 160, 165
um 156, 157, 158, 165
umlaut 6, 17, 18, 19, 106, 132
um … willen 163
um … zu 172, 173
und 168
uns 74, 76, 84, 102
unser 38, 80
uns(e)re 81
unten 58
unter 78, 159, 165, 166
unterm 165, 166
us 74
use of es as an anticipatory object **143**
using adjectives **40**
using direct object pronouns 74
using indirect object pronouns 76
using modal verbs 136
using negatives 179
using nouns **1**
using prepositions **153**
using reflexive verbs 102
using subject pronouns 70
using the conditional 125
using the definite article 27
using the future tense 123
using the imperative 105
using the imperfect tense 118
using the indefinite article 35
using the infinitive 134
using the passive 150
using the perfect tense 113
using the pluperfect tense 127
using the present tense 93
using the subjunctive 129
variable verb prefixes 158
verb combinations 111
verb endings 91
verb prefixes 162

verb prefixes in the present tense **109**
verbs **91**
verbs + dative 13
verbs followed by prepositions 78, **145**
verbs followed by preposition + accusative case 146
verbs followed by preposition + dative case 147
verbs followed by the dative case **148**
verbs that form their perfect tense with **sein** 116
verbs that form their perfect tense with **haben** 115
verbs with a direct and indirect object 148
verbs with separable prefixes 178
verbs with their object in the dative 149
von 150, 153, 155, 161, 165
vor 30, 161, 165
vowel change in the imperative 106
vowel change in the imperfect tense 120
vowel changes in strong verbs 98
während 163, 172
wann? 183
warum? 183
was 46, 69, 87, 88, 89
was für 46
weak declension 42
weak masculine nouns 22
weak nouns **22**
weak, strong and mixed verbs **91**
weak verbs 91
weder noch 180
weder … noch 170, 180

wegen 163, 164
weil 172, 173
welch 46
welche 31, 32
wenig 46, 47
wenigstens 63
wenn 129, 130, 172, 177
wenn … nur 130
wer 69, 87, 89, 183
werden 9, 15, 123
werden + past participle 150
werden: present tense 124
werden: subjunctive 125
what 89
when? 183
whenever 130
where 60
where? 183
which 69, 86, 89
which? 183
who 69, 86, 89
whom 86, 89
whom? 183
whose 89
whose? 183
why? 183
wie 130
wie? 183
will 123
wir 70
with 153, 154
without 157
wo- 87, 89
wo? 183
woher 183
wohin 60, 183
wollen 75, 136, 137
word order **175**
word order in questions 183
word order with direct object

pronouns 74
word order with indirect object pronouns 77
word order with negatives 180
word order with reflexive pronouns 84
word order with separable prefixes 110
word order with the imperative 106
words declined like the definite article 31
words declined like the indefinite article 37
would 125
you 69, 71, 74
your 80
yours 69, 80, 81
yourself 84, 102
yourselves 84, 102
zu 30, 78, 143, 153, 155, 165
zu + infinitive 134
zu + separable verb 173
zum 155, 165
zur 155, 165
zwischen 78, 159, 161

VERB TABLES

Introduction

The **Verb Tables** in the following section contain 97 tables of German verbs (strong, weak and mixed) in alphabetical order. Each table shows you the following forms: **Present, Perfect, Future, Present Subjunctive, Imperfect, Conditional, Imperative** and the **Present** and **Past Participles**. For more information on these tenses, how they are formed, when they are used and so on, you should look at the section on **Verbs** in the main text on pages 91-152.

In order to help you use the verbs shown in the **Verb Tables** correctly, there are also a number of example phrases at the bottom of each page to show the verb as it is used in context.

In German there are **weak** verbs (their forms follow regular patterns), **strong** verbs (their forms follow irregular patterns) and **mixed** verbs (their forms follow a mixture of regular and irregular patterns). Two of the weak verbs in these tables are **holen** (*to fetch*) and **machen** (*to do, to make*). All weak, strong and mixed verbs are shown in full.

The **Verb Index** at the end of this section contains around 1000 verbs, each of which is cross-referred to one of the verbs given in the Verb Tables. The table shows the patterns that the verb listed in the index follows.

annehmen (to accept) strong, separable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
nehme an		ich
nehmst an		du
nehmt an		er/sie/es
nehmen an		wir
nehmt an		ihr
nehmen an		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe angenommen		ich
hast angenommen		du
hat angenommen		er/sie/es
haben angenommen		wir
habt angenommen		ihr
haben angenommen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde annehmen		ich
wirst annehmen		du
wird annehmen		er/sie/es
werden annehmen		wir
werdet annehmen		ihr
werden annehmen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
nimm an!/nehmen wir an!/ nehmt an!/nehmen Sie an!	angenommen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	annehmend

arbeiten (to work) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
arbeite		ich
arbeitest		du
arbeitet		er/sie/es
arbeiten		wir
arbeitet		ihr
arbeiten		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gearbeitet		ich
hast gearbeitet		du
hat gearbeitet		er/sie/es
haben gearbeitet		wir
habt gearbeitet		ihr
haben gearbeitet		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde arbeiten		ich
wirst arbeiten		du
wird arbeiten		er/sie/es
werden arbeiten		wir
werdet arbeiten		ihr
werden arbeiten		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
arbeite!/arbeiten wir!/arbeitet!/ arbeiten Sie!	gearbeitet

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

arbeitend

atmen (to breathe) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
atme		ich
atmest		du
atmet		er/sie/es
atmen		wir
atmet		ihr
atmen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geatmet		ich
hast geatmet		du
hat geatmet		er/sie/es
haben geatmet		wir
habt geatmet		ihr
haben geatmet		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde atmen		ich
wirst atmen		du
wird atmen		er/sie/es
werden atmen		wir
werdet atmen		ihr
werden atmen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
atme!/atmen wir!/ atmet!/ atmen Sie!	geatmet
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	atmend

ausreichen (to be enough) weak, separable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
reiche aus		ich
reichst aus		du
reicht aus		er/sie/es
reichen aus		wir
reicht aus		ihr
reichen aus		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe ausgereicht		ich
hast ausgereicht		du
hat ausgereicht		er/sie/es
haben ausgereicht		wir
habt ausgereicht		ihr
haben ausgereicht		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde ausreichen		ich
wirst ausreichen		du
wird ausreichen		er/sie/es
werden ausreichen		wir
werdet ausreichen		ihr
werden ausreichen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
reich(e) aus!/reichen wir aus!/ reicht aus!/reichen Sie aus!	ausgereicht
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	ausreichend

beginnen (to begin) strong, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
beginne		ich
beginnst		du
beginnt		er/sie/es
beginnen		wir
beginnt		ihr
beginnen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe begonnen		ich
hast begonnen		du
hat begonnen		er/sie/es
haben begonnen		wir
habt begonnen		ihr
haben begonnen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde beginnen		ich
wirst beginnen		du
wird beginnen		er/sie/es
werden beginnen		wir
werdet beginnen		ihr
werden beginnen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
beginn(e)!/beginnen wir!/ beginnt!/beginnen Sie!	begonnen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	beginnend

beißen (to bite) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
beiß**e**		ich
beiß**est**		du
beiß**t**		er/sie/es
beiß**en**		wir
beiß**t**		ihr
beiß**en**		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
hab**e** gebissen		ich
hast gebissen		du
hat gebissen		er/sie/es
hab**en** gebissen		wir
habt gebissen		ihr
hab**en** gebissen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde beißen		ich
wirst beißen		du
wird beißen		er/sie/es
werden beißen		wir
werdet beißen		ihr
werden beißen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
beiß(e)!/beißen wir!/ beißt!/ beißen Sie!	gebissen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	beißend	

bestellen (to order) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
bestelle		ich
bestellst		du
bestellt		er/sie/es
bestellen		wir
bestellt		ihr
bestellen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe bestellt		ich
hast bestellt		du
hat bestellt		er/sie/es
haben bestellt		wir
habt bestellt		ihr
haben bestellt		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde bestellen		ich
wirst bestellen		du
wird bestellen		er/sie/es
werden bestellen		wir
werdet bestellen		ihr
werden bestellen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bestell(e)!/bestellen wir!/ bestellt!/bestellen Sie!	bestellt

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

bestellend

bieten (to offer) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
biete		ich
bietest		du
bietet		er/sie/es
bieten		wir
bietet		ihr
bieten		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geboten		ich
hast geboten		du
hat geboten		er/sie/es
haben geboten		wir
habt geboten		ihr
haben geboten		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde bieten		ich
wirst bieten		du
wird bieten		er/sie/es
werden bieten		wir
werdet bieten		ihr
werden bieten		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
biet(e)!/bieten wir!/ bietet!/ bieten Sie!	geboten

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

bietend

bitten (to request) strong, *formed with* **haben**

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
bitte		**ich**
bittest		**du**
bittet		**er/sie/es**
bitten		**wir**
bittet		**ihr**
bitten		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gebeten		**ich**
hast gebeten		**du**
hat gebeten		**er/sie/es**
haben gebeten		**wir**
habt gebeten		**ihr**
haben gebeten		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde bitten		**ich**
wirst bitten		**du**
wird bitten		**er/sie/es**
werden bitten		**wir**
werdet bitten		**ihr**
werden bitten		**sie/Sie**
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
bitt(e)!/bitten wir!/ bittet!/ bitten Sie!	gebeten	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	bittend	

bleiben (to remain) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
bleibe		ich
bleibst		du
bleibt		er/sie/es
bleiben		wir
bleibt		ihr
bleiben		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin geblieben		ich
bist geblieben		du
ist geblieben		er/sie/es
sind geblieben		wir
seid geblieben		ihr
sind geblieben		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde bleiben		ich
wirst bleiben		du
wird bleiben		er/sie/es
werden bleiben		wir
werdet bleiben		ihr
werden bleiben		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bleib(e)!/bleiben wir!/bleibt!/ bleiben Sie!	geblieben

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

bleibend

brechen (to break) strong, *formed with* haben/sein*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
breche		ich
brichst		du
bricht		er/sie/es
brechen		wir
brecht		ihr
brechen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gebrochen		ich
hast gebrochen		du
hat gebrochen		er/sie/es
haben gebrochen		wir
habt gebrochen		ihr
haben gebrochen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde brechen		ich
wirst brechen		du
wird brechen		er/sie/es
werden brechen		wir
werdet brechen		ihr
werden brechen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

brich!/brechen wir!/
brecht!/
brechen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gebrochen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

brechend

brennen (to burn) mixed, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
brenne		ich
brennst		du
brennt		er/sie/es
brennen		wir
brennt		ihr
brennen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gebrannt		ich
hast gebrannt		du
hat gebrannt		er/sie/es
haben gebrannt		wir
habt gebrannt		ihr
haben gebrannt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde brennen		ich
wirst brennen		du
wird brennen		er/sie/es
werden brennen		wir
werdet brennen		ihr
werden brennen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

brenn(e)!/brennen wir!/brennt!/ brennen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gebrannt

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

brennend

bringen (to bring) mixed, *formed with* **haben**

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
bringe		**ich**
bringst		**du**
bringt		**er/sie/es**
bringen		**wir**
bringt		**ihr**
bringen		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gebracht		**ich**
hast gebracht		**du**
hat gebracht		**er/sie/es**
haben gebracht		**wir**
habt gebracht		**ihr**
haben gebracht		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde bringen		**ich**
wirst bringen		**du**
wird bringen		**er/sie/es**
werden bringen		**wir**
werdet bringen		**ihr**
werden bringen		**sie/Sie**
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
bring(e)!/bringen wir!/bringt!/bringen Sie!	gebracht	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	bringend	

denken (to think) mixed, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
denke		ich
denkst		du
denkt		er/sie/es
denken		wir
denkt		ihr
denken		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gedacht		ich
hast gedacht		du
hat gedacht		er/sie/es
haben gedacht		wir
habt gedacht		ihr
haben gedacht		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde denken		ich
wirst denken		du
wird denken		er/sie/es
werden denken		wir
werdet denken		ihr
werden denken		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
denk(e)!/denken wir!/denkt!/ denken Sie!	gedacht

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

denkend

durchsetzen (to enforce) weak, separable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
setze durch		ich
setzest durch		du
setzt durch		er/sie/es
setzen durch		wir
setzt durch		ihr
setzen durch		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe durchgesetzt		ich
hast durchgesetzt		du
hat durchgesetzt		er/sie/es
haben durchgesetzt		wir
habt durchgesetzt		ihr
haben durchgesetzt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde durchsetzen		ich
wirst durchsetzen		du
wird durchsetzen		er/sie/es
werden durchsetzen		wir
werdet durchsetzen		ihr
werden durchsetzen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
setz(e) durch!/setzen wir durch!/ setzt durch!/setzen Sie durch!	durchgesetzt	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	durchsetzend	

dürfen (to be allowed to) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
darf		ich
darfst		du
darf		er/sie/es
dürfen		wir
dürft		ihr
dürfen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gedurft/dürfen		ich
hast gedurft/dürfen		du
hat gedurft/dürfen		er/sie/es
haben gedurft/dürfen		wir
habt gedurft/dürfen		ihr
haben gedurft/dürfen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde dürfen		ich
wirst dürfen		du
wird dürfen		er/sie/es
werden dürfen		wir
werdet dürfen		ihr
werden dürfen		sie/Sie

PAST PARTICIPLE

gedurft/dürfen*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

dürfend

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

empfehlen (to recommend) strong, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
empfehle		ich
empfiehlst		du
empfiehlt		er/sie/es
empfehlen		wir
empfehlt		ihr
empfehlen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe empfohlen		ich
hast empfohlen		du
hat empfohlen		er/sie/es
haben empfohlen		wir
habt empfohlen		ihr
haben empfohlen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde empfehlen		ich
wirst empfehlen		du
wird empfehlen		er/sie/es
werden empfehlen		wir
werdet empfehlen		ihr
werden empfehlen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
empfiehl!/empfehlen wir!/ empfehlt!/empfehlen Sie!	empfohlen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	empfehlend

entdecken (to discover) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
entdecke		ich
entdeckst		du
entdeckt		er/sie/es
entdecken		wir
entdeckt		ihr
entdecken		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe entdeckt		ich
hast entdeckt		du
hat entdeckt		er/sie/es
haben entdeckt		wir
habt entdeckt		ihr
haben entdeckt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde entdecken		ich
wirst entdecken		du
wird entdecken		er/sie/es
werden entdecken		wir
werdet entdecken		ihr
werden entdecken		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
entdeck(e)!/ entdecken wir!/ entdeckt!/entdecken Sie!	entdeckt	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	entdeckend	

erzählen (to tell) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
erzähle		ich
erzählst		du
erzählt		er/sie/es
erzählen		wir
erzählt		ihr
erzählen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe erzählt		ich
hast erzählt		du
hat erzählt		er/sie/es
haben erzählt		wir
habt erzählt		ihr
haben erzählt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde erzählen		ich
wirst erzählen		du
wird erzählen		er/sie/es
werden erzählen		wir
werdet erzählen		ihr
werden erzählen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
erzähl(e)!/erzählen wir!/ erzählt!/erzählen Sie!	erzählt
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	erzählend

essen (to eat) strong, *formed with* **haben**

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
esse		ich
isst		du
isst		er/sie/es
essen		wir
esst		ihr
essen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gegessen		ich
hast gegessen		du
hat gegessen		er/sie/es
haben gegessen		wir
habt gegessen		ihr
haben gegessen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde essen		ich
wirst essen		du
wird essen		er/sie/es
werden essen		wir
werdet essen		ihr
werden essen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

iss!/essen wir!/esst!/essen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gegessen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

essend

fahren (to drive; to go) strong, *formed with* haben/sein*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
fahre		ich
fährst		du
fährt		er/sie/es
fahren		wir
fahrt		ihr
fahren		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gefahren		ich
bist gefahren		du
ist gefahren		er/sie/es
sind gefahren		wir
seid gefahren		ihr
sind gefahren		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde fahren		ich
wirst fahren		du
wird fahren		er/sie/es
werden fahren		wir
werdet fahren		ihr
werden fahren		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
fahr(e)!/fahren wir!/ fahrt!/ fahren Sie!	gefahren	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	fahrend	

fallen (to fall) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
falle		ich
fällst		du
fällt		er/sie/es
fallen		wir
fallt		ihr
fallen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin gefallen		ich
bist gefallen		du
ist gefallen		er/sie/es
sind gefallen		wir
seid gefallen		ihr
sind gefallen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde fallen		ich
wirst fallen		du
wird fallen		er/sie/es
werden fallen		wir
werdet fallen		ihr
werden fallen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall(e)!/fallen wir!/ fallt!/ fallen Sie!	gefallen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

fallend

fangen (to catch) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
fange		ich
fängst		du
fängt		er/sie/es
fangen		wir
fangt		ihr
fangen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gefangen		ich
hast gefangen		du
hat gefangen		er/sie/es
haben gefangen		wir
habt gefangen		ihr
haben gefangen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde fangen		ich
wirst fangen		du
wird fangen		er/sie/es
werden fangen		wir
werdet fangen		ihr
werden fangen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
fang(e)!/fangen wir!/ fangt!/fangen Sie!	gefangen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	fangend	

finden (to find) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
finde		ich
findest		du
findet		er/sie/es
finden		wir
findet		ihr
finden		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gefunden		ich
hast gefunden		du
hat gefunden		er/sie/es
haben gefunden		wir
habt gefunden		ihr
haben gefunden		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde finden		ich
wirst finden		du
wird finden		er/sie/es
werden finden		wir
werdet finden		ihr
werden finden		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
find(e)!/finden wir!/ findet!/ finden Sie!	gefunden
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	findend

fliegen (to fly) strong, *formed with* haben/sein*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
fliege		ich
fliegst		du
fliegt		er/sie/es
fliegen		wir
fliegt		ihr
fliegen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin geflogen		ich
bist geflogen		du
hat geflogen		er/sie/es
sind geflogen		wir
seid geflogen		ihr
sind geflogen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde fliegen		ich
wirst fliegen		du
wird fliegen		er/sie/es
werden fliegen		wir
werdet fliegen		ihr
werden fliegen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

flieg(e)!/fliegen wir!/ fliegt!/ fliegen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

geflogen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

fliegend

fliehen (to flee) strong, *formed with* haben/sein*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
fliehe		ich
fliehst		du
flieht		er/sie/es
fliehen		wir
flieht		ihr
fliehen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin geflohen		ich
bist geflohen		du
ist geflohen		er/sie/es
sind geflohen		wir
seid geflohen		ihr
sind geflohen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde fliehen		ich
wirst fliehen		du
wird fliehen		er/sie/es
werden fliehen		wir
werdet fliehen		ihr
werden fliehen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
flieh(e)!/fliehen wir!/ flieht!/ fliehen Sie!	geflohen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	fliehend

fließen (to flow) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
fließe		ich
fließt		du
fließt		er/sie/es
fließen		wir
fließt		ihr
fließen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin geflossen		ich
bist geflossen		du
ist geflossen		er/sie/es
sind geflossen		wir
seid geflossen		ihr
sind geflossen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde fließen		ich
wirst fließen		du
wird fließen		er/sie/es
werden fließen		wir
werdet fließen		ihr
werden fließen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fließ(e)!/fließen wir!/ fließt!/ fließen Sie!	geflossen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	fließend

geben (to give) strong, *formed with* **haben**

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
gebe		**ich**
gibst		**du**
gibt		**er/sie/es**
geben		**wir**
gebt		**ihr**
geben		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gegeben		**ich**
hast gegeben		**du**
hat gegeben		**er/sie/es**
haben gegeben		**wir**
habt gegeben		**ihr**
haben gegeben		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde geben		**ich**
wirst geben		**du**
wird geben		**er/sie/es**
werden geben		**wir**
werdet geben		**ihr**
werden geben		**sie/Sie**
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
gib!/geben wir!/ gebt!/ geben Sie!	gegeben	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	gebend	

gehen (to go) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
gehe		ich
gehst		du
geht		er/sie/es
gehen		wir
geht		ihr
gehen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gegangen		ich
bist gegangen		du
ist gegangen		er/sie/es
sind gegangen		wir
seid gegangen		ihr
sind gegangen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde gehen		ich
wirst gehen		du
wird gehen		er/sie/es
werden gehen		wir
werdet gehen		ihr
werden gehen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

geh(e)!/gehen wir!/ geht!/ gehen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gegangen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

gehend

gewinnen (to win) strong, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
gewinne		ich
gewinnst		du
gewinnt		er/sie/es
gewinnen		wir
gewinnt		ihr
gewinnen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gewonnen		ich
hast gewonnen		du
hat gewonnen		er/sie/es
haben gewonnen		wir
habt gewonnen		ihr
haben gewonnen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde gewinnen		ich
wirst gewinnen		du
wird gewinnen		er/sie/es
werden gewinnen		wir
werdet gewinnen		ihr
werden gewinnen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
gewinn(e)!/gewinnen wir!/ gewinnt!/gewinnen Sie!	gewonnen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

gewinnend

grüßen (to greet) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
grüße		ich
grüßt		du
grüßt		er/sie/es
grüßen		wir
grüßt		ihr
grüßen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gegrüßt		ich
hast gegrüßt		du
hat gegrüßt		er/sie/es
haben gegrüßt		wir
habt gegrüßt		ihr
haben gegrüßt		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde grüßen		ich
wirst grüßen		du
wird grüßen		er/sie/es
werden grüßen		wir
werdet grüßen		ihr
werden grüßen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
grüß(e)!/grüßen wir!/grüßt!/grüßen Sie!	gegrüßt
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	grüßend

haben (to have) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
habe		ich
hast		du
habe		er/sie/es
haben		wir
habt		ihr
haben		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gehabt		ich
hast gehabt		du
hat gehabt		er/sie/es
haben gehabt		wir
habt gehabt		ihr
haben gehabt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde haben		ich
wirst haben		du
wird haben		er/sie/es
werden haben		wir
werdet haben		ihr
werden haben		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
hab(e)!/haben wir!/ habt!/ haben Sie!	gehabt	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	habend	

halten (to hold) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
halte		ich
hältst		du
hält		er/sie/es
halten		wir
haltet		ihr
halten		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gehalten		ich
hast gehalten		du
hat gehalten		er/sie/es
haben gehalten		wir
habt gehalten		ihr
haben gehalten		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde halten		ich
wirst halten		du
wird halten		er/sie/es
werden halten		wir
werdet halten		ihr
werden halten		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

halt(e)!/halten wir!/ haltet!/ halten Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gehalten

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

haltend

handeln (to trade; to act) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
handle		ich
handelst		du
handelt		er/sie/es
handeln		wir
handelt		ihr
handeln		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gehandelt		ich
hast gehandelt		du
hat gehandelt		er/sie/es
haben gehandelt		wir
habt gehandelt		ihr
haben gehandelt		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde handeln		ich
wirst handeln	würde handeln	du
wird handeln	würde handeln	er/sie/es
werden handeln		wir
werdet handeln		ihr
werden handeln		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
handle!/handeln wir!/handelt!/ handeln Sie!	gehandelt

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

handelnd

hängen* (to hang) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
hänge		**ich**
hängst		**du**
hängt		**er/sie/es**
hängen		**wir**
hängt		**ihr**
hängen		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gehangen		**ich**
hast gehangen		**du**
hat gehangen		**er/sie/es**
haben gehangen		**wir**
habt gehangen		**ihr**
haben gehangen		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde hängen		**ich**
wirst hängen		**du**
wird hängen		**er/sie/es**
werden hängen		**wir**
werdet hängen		**ihr**
werden hängen		**sie/Sie**
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
häng(e)!/hängen wir!/hängt!/ hängen Sie!	gehangen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	hängend	

heizen (to heat) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
heize		ich
heizest		du
heizt		er/sie/es
heizen		wir
heizt		ihr
heizen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geheizt		ich
hast geheizt		du
hat geheizt		er/sie/es
haben geheizt		wir
habt geheizt		ihr
haben geheizt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde heizen		ich
wirst heizen		du
wird heizen		er/sie/es
werden heizen		wir
werdet heizen		ihr
werden heizen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

heiz(e)!/heizen wir!/ heizt!/ heizen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

geheizt

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

heizend

helfen (to help) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
helfe		ich
hilfst		du
hilft		er/sie/es
helfen		wir
helft		ihr
helfen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geholfen		ich
hast geholfen		du
hat geholfen		er/sie/es
haben geholfen		wir
habt geholfen		ihr
haben geholfen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde helfen		ich
wirst helfen		du
wird helfen		er/sie/es
werden helfen		wir
werdet helfen		ihr
werden helfen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

hilf!/helfen wir!/ helft!/ helfen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

geholfen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

helfend

holen (to fetch) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
hole		ich
holst		du
holt		er/sie/es
holen		wir
holt		ihr
holen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geholt		ich
hast geholt		du
hat geholt		er/sie/es
haben geholt		wir
habt geholt		ihr
haben geholt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde holen		ich
wirst holen	würdest holen	du
wird holen	würde holen	er/sie/es
werden holen		wir
werdet holen		ihr
werden holen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
hol(e)!/holen wir!/ holt!/ holen Sie!	geholt	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	holend	

kennen (to know) *(be acquainted with)* mixed, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
kenne		ich
kennst		du
kennt		er/sie/es
kennen		wir
kennt		ihr
kennen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gekannt		ich
hast gekannt		du
hat gekannt		er/sie/es
haben gekannt		wir
habt gekannt		ihr
haben gekannt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde kennen		ich
wirst kennen		du
wird kennen		er/sie/es
werden kennen		wir
werdet kennen		ihr
werden kennen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
kenn(e)!/kennen wir!/kennt!/ kennen Sie!	gekannt	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	kennend	

kommen (to come) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
komme		ich
kommst		du
kommt		er/sie/es
kommen		wir
kommt		ihr
kommen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gekommen		ich
bist gekommen		du
ist gekommen		er/sie/es
sind gekommen		wir
seid gekommen		ihr
sind gekommen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde kommen		ich
wirst kommen		du
wird kommen		er/sie/es
werden kommen		wir
werdet kommen		ihr
werden kommen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

komm(e)!/kommen wir!/
kommt!/kommen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gekommen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

kommend

können (to be able to) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
kanne		ich
kannst		du
kanne		er/sie/es
können		wir
könnt		ihr
können		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gekonnt/können		ich
hast gekonnt/können		du
hat gekonnt/können		er/sie/es
haben gekonnt/können		wir
habt gekonnt/können		ihr
haben gekonnt/können		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde können		ich
wirst können		du
wird können		er/sie/es
werden können		wir
werdet können		ihr
werden können		sie/Sie

PAST PARTICIPLE

gekonnt/können*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

könnend

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

lassen (to leave; to allow) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
lasse		ich
lässt		du
lässt		er/sie/es
lassen		wir
lasst		ihr
lassen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gelassen/lassen		ich
hast gelassen/lassen		du
hat gelassen/lassen		er/sie/es
haben gelassen/lassen		wir
habt gelassen/lassen		ihr
haben gelassen/lassen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde lassen		ich
wirst lassen		du
wird lassen		er/sie/es
werden lassen		wir
werdet lassen		ihr
werden lassen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
lass(e)!/lassen wir!/ lasst!/ lassen Sie!	gelassen/lassen*	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	lassend	

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

laufen (to run) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
laufe		ich
läufst		du
läuft		er/sie/es
laufen		wir
lauft		ihr
laufen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin gelaufen		ich
bist gelaufen		du
ist gelaufen		er/sie/es
sind gelaufen		wir
seid gelaufen		ihr
sind gelaufen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde laufen		ich
wirst laufen		du
wird laufen		er/sie/es
werden laufen		wir
werdet laufen		ihr
werden laufen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lauf(e)!/laufen wir!/ lauft!/ laufen Sie!	gelaufen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

laufend

leiden (to suffer) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
leide		ich
leidest		du
leidet		er/sie/es
leiden		wir
leidet		ihr
leiden		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gelitten		ich
hast gelitten		du
hat gelitten		er/sie/es
haben gelitten		wir
habt gelitten		ihr
haben gelitten		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde leiden		ich
wirst leiden	**würdest leiden**	du
wird leiden	**würde leiden**	er/sie/es
werden leiden		wir
werdet leiden		ihr
werden leiden		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

leid(e)!/leiden wir!/ leidet!/ leiden Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gelitten

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

leidend

lesen (to read) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
lese		ich
lesest		du
liest		er/sie/es
lesen		wir
lest		ihr
lesen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gelesen		ich
hast gelesen		du
hat gelesen		er/sie/es
haben gelesen		wir
habt gelesen		ihr
haben gelesen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde lesen		ich
wirst lesen		du
wird lesen		er/sie/es
werden lesen		wir
werdet lesen		ihr
werden lesen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

lies!/lesen wir!/lest!/ lesen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gelesen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

lesend

liegen (to lie) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
liege		ich
liegst		du
liegt		er/sie/es
liegen		wir
liegt		ihr
liegen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gelegen		ich
hast gelegen		du
hat gelegen		er/sie/es
haben gelegen		wir
habt gelegen		ihr
haben gelegen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde liegen		ich
wirst liegen		du
wird liegen		er/sie/es
werden liegen		wir
werdet liegen		ihr
werden liegen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

lieg(e)!/liegen wir!/ liegt!/ liegen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gelegen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

liegend

lügen (to (tell a) lie) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
lüge		ich
lügst		du
lügt		er/sie/es
lügen		wir
lügt		ihr
lügen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gelogen		ich
hast gelogen		du
hat gelogen		er/sie/es
haben gelogen		wir
habt gelogen		ihr
haben gelogen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde lügen		ich
wirst lügen		du
wird lügen		er/sie/es
werden lügen		wir
werdet lügen		ihr
werden lügen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
lüg(e)!/lügen wir!/ lügt!/ lügen Sie!	gelogen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	lügend	

machen (to do; to make) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
mache		ich
machst		du
macht		er/sie/es
machen		wir
macht		ihr
machen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gemacht		ich
hast gemacht		du
hat gemacht		er/sie/es
haben gemacht		wir
habt gemacht		ihr
haben gemacht		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde machen		ich
wirst machen		du
wird machen		er/sie/es
werden machen		wir
werdet machen		ihr
werden machen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
mach!/machen wir!/ macht!/ machen Sie!	gemacht
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	machend

misstrauen (to mistrust) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
misstraue		ich
misstraust		du
misstraue		er/sie/es
misstrauen		wir
misstraut		ihr
misstrauen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe misstraut		ich
hast misstraut		du
hat misstraut		er/sie/es
haben misstraut		wir
habt misstraut		ihr
haben misstraut		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde misstrauen		ich
wirst misstrauen		du
wird misstrauen		er/sie/es
werden misstrauen		wir
werdet misstrauen		ihr
werden misstrauen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
misstrau(e)!/ misstrauen wir!/ misstraut!/misstrauen Sie!	misstraut
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	misstrauend

mögen (to like) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
mag		ich
magst		du
mag		er/sie/es
mögen		wir
mögt		ihr
mögen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gemocht/mögen		ich
hast gemocht/mögen		du
hat gemocht/mögen		er/sie/es
haben gemocht/mögen		wir
habt gemocht/mögen		ihr
haben gemocht/mögen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde mögen		ich
wirst mögen		du
wird mögen		er/sie/es
werden mögen		wir
werdet mögen		ihr
werden mögen		sie/Sie
	PAST PARTICIPLE	
	gemocht/mögen*	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	mögend	

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

müssen (to have to) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
müsse		ich
müsstest		du
müsse		er/sie/es
müssen		wir
müsstet		ihr
müssen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gemusst/müssen		ich
hast gemusst/müssen		du
hat gemusst/müssen		er/sie/es
haben gemusst/müssen		wir
habt gemusst/müssen		ihr
haben gemusst/müssen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde müssen		ich
wirst müssen		du
wird müssen		er/sie/es
werden müssen		wir
werdet müssen		ihr
werden müssen		sie/Sie

PAST PARTICIPLE

gemusst/müssen*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

müssend

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

nehmen (to take) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
nehme		ich
nimmst		du
nimmt		er/sie/es
nehmen		wir
nehmt		ihr
nehmen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe genommen		ich
hast genommen		du
hat genommen		er/sie/es
haben genommen		wir
habt genommen		ihr
haben genommen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde nehmen		ich
wirst nehmen		du
wird nehmen		er/sie/es
werden nehmen		wir
werdet nehmen		ihr
werden nehmen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

nimm!/nehmen wir!/ nehmt!/ nehmen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

genommen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

nehmend

rechnen (to calculate) weak, *formed with* **haben**

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
rechne		**ich**
rechnest		**du**
rechnet		**er/sie/es**
rechnen		**wir**
rechnet		**ihr**
rechnen		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gerechnet		**ich**
hast gerechnet		**du**
hat gerechnet		**er/sie/es**
haben gerechnet		**wir**
habt gerechnet		**ihr**
haben gerechnet		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde rechnen		**ich**
wirst rechnen		**du**
wird rechnen		**er/sie/es**
werden rechnen		**wir**
werdet rechnen		**ihr**
werden rechnen		**sie/Sie**
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
rechne!/rechnen wir!/rechnet!/ rechnen Sie!	gerechnet	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	rechnend	

reden (to talk) weak, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
rede		ich
redest		du
redet		er/sie/es
reden		wir
redet		ihr
reden		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geredet		ich
hast geredet		du
hat geredet		er/sie/es
haben geredet		wir
habt geredet		ihr
haben geredet		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde reden		ich
wirst reden		du
wird reden		er/sie/es
werden reden		wir
werdet reden		ihr
werden reden		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
red(e)!/reden wir!/ redet!/ reden Sie!	geredet
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	redend

rennen (to run) mixed, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
renne		ich
rennst		du
rennt		er/sie/es
rennen		wir
rennt		ihr
rennen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin gerannt		ich
bist gerannt		du
ist gerannt		er/sie/es
sind gerannt		wir
seid gerannt		ihr
sind gerannt		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde rennen		ich
wirst rennen		du
wird rennen		er/sie/es
werden rennen		wir
werdet rennen		ihr
werden rennen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
renn(e)!/rennen wir!/ rennt!/ rennen Sie!	gerannt
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	rennend

rufen (to shout; call) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
rufe		ich
rufst		du
rufe		er/sie/es
rufen		wir
ruft		ihr
rufen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gerufen		ich
hast gerufen		du
hat gerufen		er/sie/es
haben gerufen		wir
habt gerufen		ihr
haben gerufen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde rufen		ich
wirst rufen		du
wird rufen		er/sie/es
werden rufen		wir
werdet rufen		ihr
werden rufen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

ruf(e)!/rufen wir!/ ruft!/ rufen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gerufen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

rufend

scheinen (to shine; to seem) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
scheine		ich
scheinst		du
scheint		er/sie/es
scheinen		wir
scheint		ihr
scheinen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geschienen		ich
hast geschienen		du
hat geschienen		er/sie/es
haben geschienen		wir
habt geschienen		ihr
haben geschienen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde scheinen		ich
wirst scheinen		du
wird scheinen		er/sie/es
werden scheinen		wir
werdet scheinen		ihr
werden scheinen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
schein(e)!/scheinen wir!/ scheint!/ scheinen Sie!	geschienen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	scheinend	

schlafen (to sleep) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schlafe		ich
schläfst		du
schläft		er/sie/es
schlafen		wir
schlaft		ihr
schlafen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geschlafen		ich
hast geschlafen		du
hat geschlafen		er/sie/es
haben geschlafen		wir
habt geschlafen		ihr
haben geschlafen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schlafen		ich
wirst schlafen		du
wird schlafen		er/sie/es
werden schlafen		wir
werdet schlafen		ihr
werden schlafen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schlaf(e)!/schlafen wir!/schlaft!/ schlafen Sie!	geschlafen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

schlafend

schlagen (to hit) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schlage		ich
schlägst		du
schlägt		er/sie/es
schlagen		wir
schlagt		ihr
schlagen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geschlagen		ich
hast geschlagen		du
hat geschlagen		er/sie/es
haben geschlagen		wir
habt geschlagen		ihr
haben geschlagen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schlagen		ich
wirst schlagen		du
wird schlagen		er/sie/es
werden schlagen		wir
werdet schlagen		ihr
werden schlagen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schlag(e)!/schlagen wir!/ schlagt!/ schlagen Sie!	geschlagen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

schlagend

schneiden (to cut) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schneide		ich
schneidest		du
schneidet		er/sie/es
schneiden		wir
schneidet		ihr
schneiden		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geschnitten		ich
hast geschnitten		du
hat geschnitten		er/sie/es
haben geschnitten		wir
habt geschnitten		ihr
haben geschnitten		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schneiden		ich
wirst schneiden		du
wird schneiden		er/sie/es
werden schneiden		wir
werdet schneiden		ihr
werden schneiden		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schneid(e)!/schneiden wir!/ schneidet!/ schneiden Sie!	geschnitten

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

schneidend

schreiben (to write) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schreibe		ich
schreibst		du
schreibt		er/sie/es
schreiben		wir
schreibt		ihr
schreiben		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geschrieben		ich
hast geschrieben		du
hat geschrieben		er/sie/es
haben geschrieben		wir
habt geschrieben		ihr
haben geschrieben		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schreiben		ich
wirst schreiben		du
wird schreiben		er/sie/es
werden schreiben		wir
werdet schreiben		ihr
werden schreiben		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schreib(e)!/schreiben wir!/ schreibt!/ schreiben Sie!	geschrieben
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	schreibend

schreien (to shout) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schreie		ich
schreist		du
schreit		er/sie/es
schreien		wir
schreit		ihr
schreien		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe geschrien		ich
hast geschrien		du
hat geschrien		er/sie/es
haben geschrien		wir
habt geschrien		ihr
haben geschrien		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schreien		ich
wirst schreien		du
wird schreien		er/sie/es
werden schreien		wir
werdet schreien		ihr
werden schreien		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schrei(e)!/schreien wir!/ schreit!/schreien Sie!	geschrie(e)n

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

schreiend

schwimmen (to swim) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
schwimme		ich
schwimmst		du
schwimmt		er/sie/es
schwimmen		wir
schwimmt		ihr
schwimmen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin geschwommen		ich
bist geschwommen		du
ist geschwommen		er/sie/es
sind geschwommen		wir
seid geschwommen		ihr
sind geschwommen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde schwimmen		ich
wirst schwimmen		du
wird schwimmen		er/sie/es
werden schwimmen		wir
werdet schwimmen		ihr
werden schwimmen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
schwimm(e)!/ schwimmen wir!/ schwimmt!/ schwimmen Sie!	geschwommen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

schwimmend

sehen (to see) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
sehe		ich
siehst		du
sieht		er/sie/es
sehen		wir
seht		ihr
sehen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gesehen		ich
hast gesehen		du
hat gesehen		er/sie/es
haben gesehen		wir
habt gesehen		ihr
haben gesehen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sehen		ich
wirst sehen		du
wird sehen		er/sie/es
werden sehen		wir
werdet sehen		ihr
werden sehen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sieh(e)!/sehen wir!/ seht!/ sehen Sie!	gesehen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	sehend

sein (to be) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
bin		ich
bist		du
ist		er/sie/es
sind		wir
seid		ihr
sind		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gewesen		ich
bist gewesen		du
ist gewesen		er/sie/es
sind gewesen		wir
seid gewesen		ihr
sind gewesen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sein		ich
wirst sein		du
wird sein		er/sie/es
werden sein		wir
werdet sein		ihr
werden sein		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sei!/seien wir!/seid!/ seien Sie!	gewesen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	seiend

singen (to sing) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
singe		**ich**
singst		**du**
singt		**er/sie/es**
singen		**wir**
singt		**ihr**
singen		**sie/Sie**
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gesungen		**ich**
hast gesungen		**du**
hat gesungen		**er/sie/es**
haben gesungen		**wir**
habt gesungen		**ihr**
haben gesungen		**sie/Sie**
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde singen		**ich**
wirst singen		**du**
wird singen		**er/sie/es**
werden singen		**wir**
werdet singen		**ihr**
werden singen		**sie/Sie**

IMPERATIVE

sing(e)!/singen wir!/ singt!/ singen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gesungen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

singend

sinken (to sink) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
sinke		ich
sinkest		du
sinkt		er/sie/es
sinken		wir
sinkt		ihr
sinken		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gesunken		ich
bist gesunken		du
ist gesunken		er/sie/es
sind gesunken		wir
seid gesunken		ihr
sind gesunken		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sinken		ich
wirst sinken		du
wird sinken		er/sie/es
werden sinken		wir
werdet sinken		ihr
werden sinken		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

sink(e)!/sinken wir!/ sinkt!/ sinken Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gesunken

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sinkend

sitzen (to sitz) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
sitze		ich
sitzest		du
sitzt		er/sie/es
sitzen		wir
sitzt		ihr
sitzen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gesessen		ich
hast gesessen		du
hat gesessen		er/sie/es
haben gesessen		wir
habt gesessen		ihr
haben gesessen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sitzen		ich
wirst sitzen		du
wird sitzen		er/sie/es
werden sitzen		wir
werdet sitzen		ihr
werden sitzen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
sitz(e)!/sitzen wir!/ sitzt!/ sitzen Sie!	gesessen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	sitzend	

sollen (to be supposed to) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
soll**e**		ich
soll**st**		du
soll**e**		er/sie/es
sollen		wir
soll**t**		ihr
sollen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
hab**e** gesollt/sollen		ich
hab**st** gesollt/sollen		du
hat gesollt/sollen		er/sie/es
haben gesollt/sollen		wir
habt gesollt/sollen		ihr
haben gesollt/sollen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sollen		ich
wirst sollen		du
wird sollen		er/sie/es
werden sollen		wir
werdet sollen		ihr
werden sollen		sie/Sie

PAST PARTICIPLE

gesollt/sollen*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sollend

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

sprechen (to speak) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
spreche		ich
sprichst		du
spricht		er/sie/es
sprechen		wir
sprecht		ihr
sprechen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gesprochen		ich
hast gesprochen		du
hat gesprochen		er/sie/es
haben gesprochen		wir
habt gesprochen		ihr
haben gesprochen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sprechen		ich
wirst sprechen		du
wird sprechen		er/sie/es
werden sprechen		wir
werdet sprechen		ihr
werden sprechen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sprich!/sprechen wir!/sprecht!/ sprechen Sie!	gesprochen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	sprechend

springen (to jump) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
springe		ich
springst		du
springt		er/sie/es
springen		wir
springt		ihr
springen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin gesprungen		ich
bist gesprungen		du
ist gesprungen		er/sie/es
sind gesprungen		wir
seid gesprungen		ihr
sind gesprungen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde springen		ich
wirst springen		du
wird springen		er/sie/es
werden springen		wir
werdet springen		ihr
werden springen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
spring(e)!/springen wir!/ springt!/ springen Sie!	gesprungen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

springend

stehen (to stand) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
stehe		ich
stehst		du
steht		er/sie/es
stehen		wir
steht		ihr
stehen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gestanden		ich
hast (e)st gestanden		du
hat gestanden		er/sie/es
haben gestanden		wir
habt gestanden		ihr
haben gestanden		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
wird stehen		ich
wirst stehen		du
wird stehen		er/sie/es
werden stehen		wir
werdet stehen		ihr
werden stehen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

steh(e)!/stehen wir!/ steht!/ stehen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gestanden

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

stehend

stehlen (to steal) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
stehle		ich
stiehlst		du
stiehlt		er/sie/es
stehlen		wir
stehlt		ihr
stehlen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gestohlen		ich
hast gestohlen		du
hat gestohlen		er/sie/es
haben gestohlen		wir
habt gestohlen		ihr
haben gestohlen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde stehlen		ich
wirst stehlen		du
wird stehlen		er/sie/es
werden stehlen		wir
werdet stehlen		ihr
werden stehlen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

stiehl!/stehlen wir!/ stehlt!/ stehlen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gestohlen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

stehlend

steigen (to climb) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
steige		ich
steigst		du
steigt		er/sie/es
steigen		wir
steigt		ihr
steigen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gestiegen		ich
bist gestiegen		du
ist gestiegen		er/sie/es
sind gestiegen		wir
seid gestiegen		ihr
sind gestiegen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde steigen		ich
wirst steigen		du
wird steigen		er/sie/es
werden steigen		wir
werdet steigen		ihr
werden steigen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

steig(e)!/steigen wir!/gestiegen
steigt!/ steigen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

steigend

sterben (to die) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
sterbe		ich
stirbst		du
stirbt		er/sie/es
sterben		wir
sterbt		ihr
sterben		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gestorben		ich
bist gestorben		du
ist gestorben		er/sie/es
sind gestorben		wir
seid gestorben		ihr
sind gestorben		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde sterben		ich
wirst sterben		du
wird sterben		er/sie/es
werden sterben		wir
werdet sterben		ihr
werden sterben		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

stirb!/sterben wir!/ sterbt!/ sterben Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gestorben

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sterbend

studieren (to study) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
studiere		ich
studierst		du
studiert		er/sie/es
studieren		wir
studiert		ihr
studieren		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe studiert		ich
hast studiert		du
hat studiert		er/sie/es
haben studiert		wir
habt studiert		ihr
haben studiert		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde studieren		ich
wirst studieren		du
wird studieren		er/sie/es
werden studieren		wir
werdet studieren		ihr
werden studieren		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
studiere!/studieren wir!/ studiert!/ studieren Sie!	studiert

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

studierend

tragen (to wear; to carry) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
trage		ich
trägst		du
trägt		er/sie/es
tragen		wir
tragt		ihr
tragen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe getragen		ich
hast getragen		du
hat getragen		er/sie/es
haben getragen		wir
habt getragen		ihr
haben getragen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde tragen		ich
wirst tragen		du
wird tragen		er/sie/es
werden tragen		wir
werdet tragen		ihr
werden tragen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
trag(e)!/tragen wir!/ tragt!/ tragen Sie!	getragen	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	tragend	

treffen (to meet) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
treffe		ich
triffst		du
trifft		er/sie/es
treffen		wir
trefft		ihr
treffen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe getroffen		ich
hast getroffen		du
hat getroffen		er/sie/es
haben getroffen		wir
habt getroffen		ihr
haben getroffen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde treffen		ich
wirst treffen		du
wird treffen		er/sie/es
werden treffen		wir
werdet treffen		ihr
werden treffen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

triff!/treffen wir!/
trefft!/
treffen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

getroffen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

treffend

treten (to kick; to step) strong, *formed with* haben/sein*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
trete		ich
trittst		du
tritt		er/sie/es
treten		wir
tretet		ihr
treten		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe getreten		ich
hast getreten		du
hat getreten		er/sie/es
haben getreten		wir
habt getreten		ihr
haben getreten		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde treten		ich
wirst treten		du
wird treten		er/sie/es
werden treten		wir
werdet treten		ihr
werden treten		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
tritt!/treten wir!/ tretet!/ treten Sie!	getreten	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	tretend	

trinken (to drink) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
trinke		ich
trinkst		du
trinkt		er/sie/es
trinken		wir
trinkt		ihr
trinken		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe getrunken		ich
hast getrunken		du
hat getrunken		er/sie/es
haben getrunken		wir
habt getrunken		ihr
haben getrunken		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde trinken		ich
wirst trinken		du
wird trinken		er/sie/es
werden trinken		wir
werdet trinken		ihr
werden trinken		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
trink(e)!/trinken wir!/trinkt!/ trinken Sie!	getrunken
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	trinkend

tun (to do) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
tue		ich
tust		du
tue		er/sie/es
tun		wir
tut		ihr
tun		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe getan		ich
hast getan		du
hat getan		er/sie/es
haben getan		wir
habt getan		ihr
haben getan		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde tun		ich
wirst tun		du
wird tun		er/sie/es
werden tun		wir
werdet tun		ihr
werden tun		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

tu(e)!/tun wir!/tut!/ tun Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

getan

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

tuend

sich überlegen (to consider) weak, inseparable, reflexive, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
überlege mir		ich
überlegst dir		du
überlegt sich		er/sie/es
überlegen uns		wir
überlegt euch		ihr
überlegen sich		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe mir überlegt		ich
hast dir überlegt		du
hat sich überlegt		er/sie/es
haben uns überlegt		wir
habt euch überlegt		ihr
haben sich überlegt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde mir überlegen		ich
wirst dir überlegen		du
wird sich überlegen		er/sie/es
werden uns überlegen		wir
werdet euch überlegen		ihr
werden sich überlegen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
überleg(e)dir!/ überlegen wir uns!/ überlegt euch!/ überlegen Sie sich!	überlegt
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	überlegend

vergessen (to forget) strong, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
vergesse		ich
vergisst		du
vergisst		er/sie/es
vergessen		wir
vergesst		ihr
vergessen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe vergessen		ich
hast vergessen		du
hat vergessen		er/sie/es
haben vergessen		wir
habt vergessen		ihr
haben vergessen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde vergessen		ich
wirst vergessen		du
wird vergessen		er/sie/es
werden vergessen		wir
werdet vergessen		ihr
werden vergessen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
vergiss!/vergessen wir!/ vergesst!/ vergessen Sie!	vergessen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vergessend

verlangen (to demand) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
verlange		ich
verlangst		du
verlangt		er/sie/es
verlangen		wir
verlangt		ihr
verlangen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe verlangt		ich
hast verlangt		du
hat verlangt		er/sie/es
haben verlangt		wir
habt verlangt		ihr
haben verlangt		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde verlangen		ich
wirst verlangen		du
wird verlangen		er/sie/es
werden verlangen		wir
werdet verlangen		ihr
werden verlangen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
verlang(e)!/verlangen wir!/ verlangt!/ verlangen Sie!	verlangt
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	verlangend

verlieren (to lose) strong, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
verliere		ich
verlierst		du
verliert		er/sie/es
verlieren		wir
verliert		ihr
verlieren		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe verloren		ich
hast verloren		du
hat verloren		er/sie/es
haben verloren		wir
habt verloren		ihr
haben verloren		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde verlieren		ich
wirst verlieren		du
wird verlieren		er/sie/es
werden verlieren		wir
werdet verlieren		ihr
werden verlieren		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
verlier(e)!/verlieren wir!/ verliert!/ verlieren Sie!	verloren
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	verlierend

verschwinden (to disappear) strong, inseparable, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
verschwinde		ich
verschwindest		du
verschwindet		er/sie/es
verschwinden		wir
verschwindet		ihr
verschwinden		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin verschwunden		ich
bist verschwunden		du
ist verschwunden		er/sie/es
sind verschwunden		wir
seid verschwunden		ihr
sind verschwunden		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde verschwinden		ich
wirst verschwinden		du
wird verschwinden		er/sie/es
werden verschwinden		wir
werdet verschwinden		ihr
werden verschwinden		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
verschwind(e)!/ verschwinden wir!/ verschwindet!/ verschwinden Sie!	verschwunden

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

verschwindend

wachsen (to grow) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
wachse		ich
wächsest		du
wächst		er/sie/es
wachsen		wir
wachst		ihr
wachsen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
bin gewachsen		ich
bist gewachsen		du
ist gewachsen		er/sie/es
sind gewachsen		wir
seid gewachsen		ihr
sind gewachsen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde wachsen		ich
wirst wachsen		du
wird wachsen		er/sie/es
werden wachsen		wir
werdet wachsen		ihr
werden wachsen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wachs(e)!/wachsen wir!/ wachst!/ wachsen Sie!	gewachsen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	wachsend

wandern (to roam; to go hillwalking) weak, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
wand(e)re		ich
wanderst		du
wand(e)re		er/sie/es
wandern		wir
wandert		ihr
wandern		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gewandert		ich
bist gewandert		du
ist gewandert		er/sie/es
sind gewandert		wir
seid gewandert		ihr
sind gewandert		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde wandern		ich
wirst wandern		du
wird wandern		er/sie/es
werden wandern		wir
werdet wandern		ihr
werden wandern		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wandre!/wandern wir!/ wandert!/ wandern Sie!	gewandert
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	wandernd

waschen (to wash) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
wasche		ich
wäschst		du
wäscht		er/sie/es
waschen		wir
wascht		ihr
waschen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gewaschen		ich
hast gewaschen		du
hat gewaschen		er/sie/es
haben gewaschen		wir
habt gewaschen		ihr
haben gewaschen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde waschen		ich
wirst waschen		du
wird waschen		er/sie/es
werden waschen		wir
werdet waschen		ihr
werden waschen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wasch(e)!/waschen wir!/ wascht!/ waschen Sie!	gewaschen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

waschend

werben (to recruit; to advertise) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
werbe		ich
wirbst		du
wirbt		er/sie/es
werben		wir
werbt		ihr
werben		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geworben		ich
hast geworben		du
hat geworben		er/sie/es
haben geworben		wir
habt geworben		ihr
haben geworben		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde werben		ich
wirst werben		du
wird werben		er/sie/es
werden werben		wir
werdet werben		ihr
werden werben		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

wirb!/werben wir!/ werbt!/ werben Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

geworben

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

werbend

werden (to become) strong, *formed with* sein

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
werde		ich
wirdst		du
wird		er/sie/es
werden		wir
werdet		ihr
werden		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin geworden		ich
bist geworden		du
ist geworden		er/sie/es
sind geworden		wir
seid geworden		ihr
sind geworden		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde werden		ich
wirst werden		du
wird werden		er/sie/es
werden werden		wir
werdet werden		ihr
werden werden		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
werde!/werden wir!/ werdet!/ werden Sie!	geworden	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	werdend	

werfen (to throw) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
werfe		ich
wirfst		du
wirft		er/sie/es
werfen		wir
werft		ihr
werfen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe geworfen		ich
hast geworfen		du
hat geworfen		er/sie/es
haben geworfen		wir
habt geworfen		ihr
haben geworfen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde werfen		ich
wirst werfen		du
wird werfen		er/sie/es
werden werfen		wir
werdet werfen		ihr
werden werfen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

wirf!/werfen wir!/ werft!/ werfen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

geworfen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

werfend

wissen (to know) mixed, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
weiß		ich
weißt		du
weiß		er/sie/es
wissen		wir
wisst		ihr
wissen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gewusst		ich
hast gewusst		du
hat gewusst		er/sie/es
haben gewusst		wir
habt gewusst		ihr
haben gewusst		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde wissen		ich
wirst wissen		du
wird wissen		er/sie/es
werden wissen		wir
werdet wissen		ihr
werden wissen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

wisse!/wissen wir!/ wisset!/ wissen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gewusst

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

wissend

wollen (to want) modal, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
will		ich
willst		du
will		er/sie/es
wollen		wir
wollt		ihr
wollen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe gewollt/wollen		ich
hast gewollt/wollen		du
hat gewollt/wollen		er/sie/es
haben gewollt/wollen		wir
habt gewollt/wollen		ihr
haben gewollt/wollen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde wollen		ich
wirst wollen		du
wird wollen		er/sie/es
werden wollen		wir
werdet wollen		ihr
werden wollen		sie/Sie
IMPERATIVE	**PAST PARTICIPLE**	
wolle!/wollen wir!/ wollt!/ wollen Sie!	gewollt/wollen*	
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	
	wollend	

* *This form is used when combined with another infinitive.*

zerstören (to destroy) weak, inseparable, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
zerstöre		ich
zerstörst		du
zerstört		er/sie/es
zerstören		wir
zerstört		ihr
zerstören		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
habe zerstört		ich
hast zerstört		du
hat zerstört		er/sie/es
haben zerstört		wir
habt zerstört		ihr
haben zerstört		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde zerstören		ich
wirst zerstören		du
wird zerstören		er/sie/es
werden zerstören		wir
werdet zerstören		ihr
werden zerstören		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

zerstör(e)!/zerstören wir!/ zerstört!/zerstören Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

zerstört

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

zerstörend

ziehen (to pull) strong, *formed with* sein/haben*

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
ziehe		ich
ziehst		du
zieht		er/sie/es
ziehen		wir
zieht		ihr
ziehen		sie/Sie
PERFECT	**IMPERFECT**	
bin gezogen		ich
bist gezogen		du
ist gezogen		er/sie/es
sind gezogen		wir
seid gezogen		ihr
sind gezogen		sie/Sie
FUTURE	**CONDITIONAL**	
werde ziehen		ich
wirst ziehen		du
wird ziehen		er/sie/es
werden ziehen		wir
werdet ziehen		ihr
werden ziehen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE

zieh(e)!/ziehen wir!/ zieht!/ ziehen Sie!

PAST PARTICIPLE

gezogen

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ziehend

zwingen (to force) strong, *formed with* haben

PRESENT	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
zwinge		ich
zwingst		du
zwingt		er/sie/es
zwingen		wir
zwingt		ihr
zwingen		sie/Sie

PERFECT	IMPERFECT	
habe gezwungen		ich
hast gezwungen		du
hat gezwungen		er/sie/es
haben gezwungen		wir
habt gezwungen		ihr
haben gezwungen		sie/Sie

FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	
werde zwingen		ich
wirst zwingen		du
wird zwingen		er/sie/es
werden zwingen		wir
werdet zwingen		ihr
werden zwingen		sie/Sie

IMPERATIVE	PAST PARTICIPLE
zwing(e)!/zwingen wir!/ zwingt!/zwingen Sie!	gezwungen
	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
	zwingend

How to use the Verb Index

The verbs in bold are the model verbs which you will find in the Verb Tables. All the other verbs follow one of these patterns, so the number next to each verb indicates which pattern fits this particular verb. For example, **begleiten** (*to accompany*) follows the same pattern as **arbeiten** (*to work*), number 3 in the Verb Tables.

All the verbs are in alphabetical order. For reflexive verbs like **sich setzen** (*to sit down*) look under **setzen**, not under **sich**.

With the exception of reflexive verbs which are always formed with **haben**, most verbs have the same auxiliary (**sein** or **haben**) as their model verb. If this is different, it is shown in the Verb Index. Certain verbs can be formed with both **haben** and **sein** and there is a note about this at the relevant verb table.

Some verbs in the Verb Index have a dividing line through them to show that the verb is separable, for example, **durch|setzen**.

*For more information on **separable** and **inseparable** verbs, see page 109.*

ab|brechen	12
ab|fahren	22
ab|fliegen	26
ab|fragen	5
ab|geben	29
ab|gewöhnen	39
ab|hängen	36
ab|holen	5
ab|kürzen	37
ab|laufen	44
ab|lehnen	5

ab|lenken 5
ab|liefern (*haben*) 89
ab|machen 5
ab|nehmen 53
abonnieren 77
ab|reisen (*sein*) 5
ab|sagen +*dat* 5
ab|schaffen 5
ab|schicken 5
ab|schneiden 61
ab|schreiben 62
ab|schrecken 5
ab|setzen (sich *acc*) 37
ab|stellen 5
ab|stürzen (*sein*) 37
ab|trocknen 54
ab|waschen 90
ab|werten 3
ab|ziehen 97
achten 3
addieren 77
adressieren 77
ähneln +*dat* 35
amüsieren (sich *acc)* 77
an|bauen 5
an|bieten 9
an|brechen 12
an|brennen 13
ändern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
an|deuten 3
an|fahren 22
an|fangen 24
an|fassen 32
an|geben 29
an|gehen 30
angeln 35
an|gewöhnen 39
an|haben 33
an|halten 34

an|hören 5
an|kommen 41
an|kreuzen 37
an|kündigen 5
an|machen 5
an|melden 55
an|nehmen **2**
an|ordnen 54
an|probieren 77
an|rufen 57
an|schalten 3
an|schauen 5
an|schreien 63
an|sehen 65
an|sprechen 71
an|starren 5
an|stecken 5
an|stellen 5
an|strengen (sich *acc*) 5
antworten 3
an|zeigen 5
an|ziehen 97
an|zünden 55
arbeiten **3**
ärgern (*haben*) 89
atmen **4**
auf|bauen 5
auf|bewahren 39
auf|bleiben 11
auf|brechen 12
auf|essen 21
auf|fallen + *dat* 23
auf|fangen 24
auf|führen 5
auf|geben 29
auf|gehen 30
auf|haben 33
auf|halten 34
auf|hängen 36
auf|heitern (*haben*) 89

auf|hören 5
auf|klären 5
auf|lassen 43
auf|lösen (sich *acc*) 5
auf|machen 5
auf|muntern (*haben*) 89
auf|nehmen 53
auf|passen 32
auf|räumen 5
aufrecht|erhalten 34
auf|regen 5
auf|schreiben 62
auf|sehen 65
auf|setzen 37
auf|stehen 73
auf|steigen 75
auf|stellen 5
auf|tauchen 5
auf|tauen 5
auf|teilen 5
auf|treten 80
auf|wachen 5
auf|wachsen 88
auf|wecken 5
auf|zählen 5
auf|ziehen 97
aus|atmen 3
aus|beuten 3
aus|bilden 55
aus|denken (sich *dat*) 15
aus|drücken (sich *acc*) 5
aus|fallen 23
aus|führen 5
aus|geben 29
aus|gehen 30
aus|halten 34
aus|kennen (sich *acc*) 40
aus|kommen 41
aus|lachen 5
aus|lassen 43

aus|machen 49
aus|packen 5
aus|reichen **5**
aus|rufen 57
aus|ruhen (sich *acc*) 5
aus|schalten 3
aus|schlafen (sich *acc*) 59
aus|sehen 65
äußern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
aus|spannen 5
aus|sprechen 71
aus|steigen 75
aus|stellen 5
aus|suchen 5
aus|teilen 5
aus|tragen 78
aus|trinken 81
aus|wählen 5
aus|wandern 89
aus|ziehen 97
baden 55
basteln 35
bauen 39
beachten 3
beanspruchen 8
beantragen 8
beantworten 3
bearbeiten 3
bedanken (sich *acc*) 8
bedauern (*haben*) 89
bedeuten 3
bedienen (sich *acc*: + *gen*) 8
bedrohen 8
beeilen (sich *acc)* 8
beeindrucken 8
beeinflussen 8
beenden 55
befinden (sich *acc*) 25
befördern (*haben*) 89
befragen 8

befreien 8
befriedigen 8
befürchten 3
befürworten 3
begegnen +*dat* (*sein*) 54
begehen 30
begehren 8
begeistern 89
beginnen **6**
begleiten 3
begründen 55
begrüßen 32
behalten 34
behandeln 35
behaupten 3
beherrschen 8
behindern (*haben*) 89
beichten 3
bei|legen 5
beißen **7**
bei|tragen 78
bei|treten (*sein*) 80
bekämpfen 8
beklagen (sich *acc*) 8
bekommen +*dat* 41
belasten (sich *acc*) 3
belästigen 8
beleidigen 8
bellen 39
belohnen 8
belügen 48
bemerken 8
bemühen (sich *acc*) 8
benachrichtigen 8
benehmen (sich *acc*) 53
beneiden 55
benutzen 37
beobachten 3
bereiten 3
bereuen 8

berichten 3
berücksichtigen 8
beruhigen (sich *acc*) 19
berühren 19
beschäftigen (sich *acc*) 19
beschimpfen 19
beschränken (sich *acc*) 19
beschreiben 62
beschweren (sich *acc*) 19
besichtigen 19
besitzen 69
besorgen 19
besprechen 71
bessern (*haben*) 89
bestätigen (sich *acc*) 19
bestehen 73
bestellen **8**
bestimmen 8
bestrafen 8
besuchen 8
betäuben 8
beteiligen 8
beten 3
betonen 8
betreffen 79
betreten 80
betrinken (sich *acc*) 81
betteln 35
beugen (sich *acc*) 39
beunruhigen (sich *acc*) 8
beurteilen 8
bevorzugen 8
bewähren (sich *acc*) 8
bewegen (sich *acc*) 8
bewerben (sich *acc*) 91
bewirken 8
bewohnen 8
bewundern (*haben*) 89
bezahlen 8
bezeichnen 54

beziehen (sich *acc*) 97
bezweifeln 35
bieten **9**
bilden 55
bitten **10**
bleiben **11**
blenden 55
blicken 49
blitzen 37
blühen 39
bluten 3
bohren 39
brauchen 49
brechen **12**
bremsen 37
brennen **13**
bringen **14**
brüllen 39
buchen 49
buchstabieren 77
bügeln 35
bürsten 3
danken + *dat* 39
dar|stellen 5
dauern (*haben*) 89
davon|kommen 41
decken (sich *acc*) 39
dehnen (sich *acc*) 39
demonstrieren 77
denken **15**
dienen + *dat* 39
diktieren 77
diskutieren 77
dolmetschen 49
donnern (*haben*) 89
drehen (sich *acc*) 39
drohen + *dat* 39
drücken 39
duften 3
durch|blicken 16

durch|fahren 22
durch|führen 5
durch|kommen 41
durch|lesen 46
durch|setzen (sich *acc*) **16**
durchsuchen 19
dürfen **17**
duschen (sich *acc*) 49
duzen 37
eignen (sich *acc*) 54
eilen (*sein*) 39
ein|atmen 4
ein|bilden (sich *dat)* 55
ein|brechen 12
ein|fallen + *dat* 23
einigen (sich *acc*) 39
ein|kaufen 5
ein|laufen 44
ein|leben 5
ein|mischen (sich *acc*) 5
ein|ordnen (sich *acc*) 54
ein|richten (sich *acc*) 3
ein|schalten (sich *acc*) 3
ein|schlafen 59
ein|schränken (sich *acc*) 5
ein|schüchtern (*haben*) 89
ein|sehen 65
ein|setzen (sich *acc*) 37
ein|sperren 5
ein|steigen 75
ein|stellen (sich *acc*) 5
ein|tragen (sich *acc*) 78
ein|treffen 79
ein|treten 80
ein|wandern 89
ein|weihen 5
ein|ziehen 97

ekeln (sich *acc*) 35
empfehlen **18**
empfinden 25
enden 55
entdecken **19**
entfallen 23
entfernen (sich *acc*) 19
entführen 19
entgegen|kommen 41
enthalten 34
entkommen 41
entlassen 43
entmutigen 19
entschuldigen
(sich *acc*) 19
entspannen (sich *acc*) 19
entsprechen +*dat* 71
enttäuschen 19
entwickeln (sich *acc*) 35
erben 39
ereignen (sich *acc*) 54
erfahren 22
erfassen 32
erfinden 25
ergänzen (sich *acc*) 37
erhalten 34
erholen (sich *acc*) 20
erinnern (sich *acc*: +*gen*)
(*haben*) 89
erkennen 40
erklären 20
erkundigen (sich *acc*) 20
erlauben 20
erleben 20
erledigen 20
erlernen 20
ermorden 54
ernähren (sich *acc*) 20
erneuern (*haben*) 89
ernten 3

erobern (*haben*) 89
erreichen 20
erscheinen (*sein*) 58
ersetzen 37
ersticken 20
ertragen 78
erwähnen 20
erwarten 3
erzählen **20**
erzeugen 20
essen **21**
fahren **22**
fallen **23**
falten 3
fangen **24**
färben (sich *acc*) 39
fassen 32
faulenzen 37
faxen 37
fehlen + *dat* 39
feiern (*haben*) 89
fern|sehen 65
fest|halten 34
fest|stellen 5
filmen 39
finden **25**
fischen 49
fliegen **26**
fliehen **27**
fließen **28**
flüstern (*haben*) 89
folgen + *dat* 39
foltern (*haben*) 89
fordern (*haben*) 89
fort|fahren 22
fort|setzen 16
fotografieren 77
fragen 39
frei|lassen 43
freuen (sich *acc*) 39

frühstücken 39
fühlen (sich *acc*) 39
führen 39
füllen 39
fürchten 3
füttern (*haben*) 89
gähnen 39
garantieren 77
geben **29**
gebrauchen 49
gefallen + *dat* 23
gehen **30**
gehorchen + *dat* 49
gehören + *dat* 39
genügen + *dat* 39
gestatten 3
gewinnen **31**
gewöhnen (sich *acc*) 76
glänzen 37
glauben 39
gratulieren + *dat* 77
grenzen 37
grüßen **32**
gucken 39
haben **33**
haften 3
halten (sich *acc*) **34**
handeln **35**
hängen **36**
hassen 32
heilen 39
heim|kehren (*sein*) 16
heiraten 3
heizen **37**
helfen + *dat* **38**
heran|fahren 22
heraus|fordern 16
heraus|stellen 16
her|geben 29
herrschen 49

her|stellen 5
herum|gehen 30
hervor|rufen 57
heulen 39
hinaus|gehen 30
hinaus|werfen 93
hindern (*haben*) 89
hin|fallen 23
hinken 39
hin|legen 5
hin|nehmen 53
hinzu|fügen 16
hoffen 39
holen **39**
horchen 49
hören 39
hüpfen 39
husten 3
hüten (sich *acc*) 3
identifizieren (sich *acc*) 77
impfen 39
informieren (sich *acc*) 77
interessieren (sich *acc*) 77
irre|führen 5
irren (sich *acc*) 39
jagen 39
jammern (*haben*) 89
jubeln 35
jucken 39
kämmen (sich *acc*) 39
kämpfen 39
kapieren 77
kassieren 77
kauen 39
kaufen 39
kennen **40**
keuchen 49
kichern (*haben*) 89
kitzeln 35

klagen 39
klatschen 49
klauen 39
kleben 39
klettern 89
klingeln 35
klopfen 39
knabbern (*haben*) 89
kochen 49
kommen **41**
können **42**
kontrollieren 77
konzentrieren
(sich *acc*) 77
kopieren 77
korrigieren 77
kosten 3
kratzen 37
kriegen 39
kritisieren 77
kümmern (sich *acc*) 39
kürzen 37
küssen 49
lächeln 35
lachen 49
lagern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
lähmen 39
landen 55
langweilen (sich *acc*) 39
lassen **43**
laufen **44**
lauten 3
läuten 3
leben 39
lecken 49
leeren 39
legen 39
lehnen (sich *acc*) 39
lehren 39
leiden **45**

leisten 3
leiten 3
lenken 39
lernen 39
lesen **46**
leuchten 3
lieben 39
liefern (*haben*) 89
liegen **47**
loben 39
lohnen 39
löschen 49
lügen **48**
lutschen 49
machen **49**
mähen 49
malen 39
meckern (*haben*) 89
meinen 39
melden 55
merken (sich *dat*) 39
mieten 3
mischen 49
missbilligen 50
misstrauen + ***dat*** **50**
missverstehen 73
mit|bringen 14
mit|fahren 22
mit|kommen 41
mit|nehmen 53
mit|teilen 5
möblieren 77
mögen **51**
murmeln 35
müssen **52**
nach|ahmen 16
nach|denken 15
nach|geben 29
nach|gehen 30
nach|holen 5

nach|lassen 43
nachlaufen 44
nach|machen 5
nach|prüfen 5
nach|sehen 65
nähen 39
nähern + *dat* (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
nehmen **53**
nicken 49
niesen 39
nörgeln 35
nutzen 37
nützen 37
öffnen 54
ohrfeigen 39
operieren 77
organisieren 77
ordnen 54
orientieren (sich *acc*) 77
packen 39
parken 39
passen + *dat* 32
passieren 77
pendeln 35
pflanzen 37
pflegen 39
pflücken 49
plagen (sich *acc*) 39
planen 39
platzen 37
plaudern (*haben*) 89
prahlen 39
pressen 32
probieren 77
produzieren 77
profitieren 77
protestieren 77
prüfen 39
prügeln (sich *acc*) 35

pumpen 39
putzen 37
quälen (sich *acc*) 39
qualifizieren (sich *acc*) 77
quatschen 49
quietschen 49
rasen 89
rasieren 77
rauchen 49
räuchern (*haben*) 89
räuspern (sich *acc*)
(*haben*) 89
reagieren 77
rechnen **54**
rechtfertigen 39
reden **55**
regeln 35
regieren 77
regnen 54
reichen 49
reinigen 39
reisen (*sein*) 37
reizen 37
rennen **56**
reparieren 77
reservieren 77
retten 3
richten (sich *acc*) 3
riskieren 77
rollen 39
röntgen 55
rosten 3
rücken 39
rufen **57**
rühren (sich *acc*) 39
rutschen (*sein*) 49
sagen 39
sammeln 35
schaden +*dat* 55
schälen 39

schalten 3
schämen (sich *acc*: + *gen*) 39
schätzen 37
schauen 39
schaukeln 35
scheinen 58
scheitern 89
schenken 39
schicken 49
schimmeln 35
schimpfen 39
schlachten 3
schlafen 59
schlagen 60
schleudern (*haben*) 89
schluchzen 37
schmecken + *dat* 49
schmeicheln + *dat* 39
schmerzen 37
schminken (sich *acc*) 39
schmuggeln 35
schnarchen 49
schnäuzen (sich *acc*) 37
schneiden 61
schneien 39
schöpfen 39
schreiben 62
schreien 63
schulden 55
schütteln 35
schütten 3
schützen 37
schwanken 39
schwänzen 37
schwärmen 39
schwimmen 64
schwindeln 35
schwitzen 37
segeln 35
sehen 65

sehnen (sich *acc)* 39
sein **66**
setzen (sich *acc*) 37
seufzen 37
sichern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
siegen 39
siezen 37
singen **67**
sinken **68**
sitzen **69**
sollen **70**
sonnen (sich *acc*) 39
sparen 39
spenden 55
sperren 39
spielen 39
spotten 3
sprechen **71**
springen **72**
spritzen 37
spucken 39
spülen 39
spüren 39
stammen 39
starten 3
statt|finden 25
staunen 39
stecken 49
stehen **73**
stehlen **74**
steigen **75**
stellen 39
stempeln 35
sterben **76**
sticken 39
stimmen 39
stöhnen 39
stolpern 89
stören 39
strahlen 39

streiken 39
stricken 49
studieren **77**
stürmen 39
stürzen (sich *acc*) 37
subtrahieren 77
suchen 49
tanken 39
tanzen 37
tapezieren 77
tauchen 49
tauen 39
taufen 39
taugen 39
tauschen 49
täuschen (sich *acc*) 49
teilen 39
teil|nehmen 53
telefonieren 77
testen 3
tippen 39
toben 39
töten 3
tragen **78**
transportieren 77
trauen + *dat* 39
treffen **79**
träumen 39
trennen (sich *acc*) 39
treten **80**
trinken **81**
trocknen 54
trommeln 35
trösten (sich *acc*) 3
trotzen + *dat* 37
tun **82**
turnen 39
üben (sich *acc*) 39
überanstrengen (sich *acc*) 19

überdenken 15
überfahren 22
überfallen 23
überfordern (*haben*) 89
übergeben 29
überholen 19
überhören 19
überlassen 43
überleben 19
überlegen (sich *acc*) 83
übernachten 3
übernehmen (sich *dat*) 53
überprüfen 19
überraschen 19
überreden 55
überschätzen 37
übersehen 65
übersetzen 37
überspringen 72
überstehen 73
übersteigen 75
überstürzen 37
übertragen 78
übertreffen 79
überwachen 19
überzeugen 19
um|blättern 5
um|bringen (sich *acc*) 14
um|fallen 23
um|gehen 30
umgehen (*haben*) 30
unterhalten (sich *acc*) 34
unternehmen 53
unterrichten (sich *acc*) 3
unterschätzen 37
unterscheiden (sich *acc*) 61
unterschreiben 62
unter|stellen 5
unterstellen 19

unterstützen 37
untersuchen 19
urteilen 39
verabreden (sich *acc*) 55
verabschieden
(sich *acc*) 55
verallgemeinern
(*haben*) 89
veralten (*sein*) 3
verändern (*haben*) 89
veranlassen 85
veranstalten 3
verantworten 3
verärgern (*haben*) 89
verbessern (*haben*) 89
verbieten 9
verblüffen 85
verbluten (*sein*) 3
verbrauchen 85
verbrennen (sich *acc*) 13
verbringen 14
verdächtigen 85
verdanken + *dat* 85
verdauen 85
verdienen 85
verdoppeln 35
vereinbaren 85
vereinen 85
vereinfachen 85
vereinigen (sich *acc*) 85
vererben 19
verfahren 22
verfolgen 85
verführen 85
vergeben 29
vergehen (sich *acc*) 30
vergessen **84**
vergrößern (*haben*) 89
verhaften 3
verhalten (sich *acc*) 34

verhandeln 35
verhindern (*haben*) 89
verhören (sich *acc*) 85
verhungern 89
verirren (sich *acc*) 85
verkaufen 85
verkleiden (sich *acc*) 55
verkleinern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
verlangen **85**
verlassen 43
verlaufen (sich *acc*) 44
verlernen 85
verletzen (sich *acc*) 37
verlieben (sich *acc*) 85
verlieren **86**
verloben (sich *acc*) 85
vermieten 3
vernachlässigen 85
vernichten 3
veröffentlichen 85
verpflichten 3
verreisen 85
versammeln (sich *acc*) 35
versäumen 85
verschlafen 59
verschlechtern (sich *acc*) (*haben*) 89
verschonen 85
verschreiben 62
verschwinden **87**
versichern (sich *acc*: + *gen*) (*haben*) 89
versöhnen (sich *acc*) 85
versprechen 71
verstehen 73
versuchen 85
verteidigen (sich *acc*) 85
verteilen (sich *acc*) 85
vertragen 78

vertrauen +*dat* 85
(sich *dat*) 85
vertreten 80
vertun (sich *acc*) 82
verunglücken (*sein*) 85
verursachen 85
verurteilen 85
vervielfältigen 85
verwechseln 35
verweigern (*haben*) 89
verwirren (sich *acc*) 85
verwöhnen (sich *acc*) 85
verzichten 3
verzögern (sich *acc*)
(*haben*) 89
verzollen 85
voran|kommen 41
voraus|gehen 30
voraus|setzen 16
vorbei|kommen 41
vor|bereiten (sich *acc*) 3
vor|beugen +*dat*
(sich *acc*) 5
vor|führen 5
vor|gehen 30
vor|haben 33
vor|kommen +*dat* 41
vor|nehmen (sich *acc*) 53
vor|schlagen 60
vor|stellen (sich *acc*) 5
vor|täuschen 5
vor|werfen 93
vor|ziehen 97
wachsen **88**
wagen 39
wählen 39
wahr|nehmen 53
wandern **89**
warnen 39
warten 3

waschen (sich *acc*) **90**
wechseln 35
wecken 39
weg|gehen 30
weg|lassen 43
weg|laufen 44
weg|nehmen 53
weg|werfen 93
wehren (sich *acc*) 39
weh|tun 82
weigern (sich *acc*)
(*haben*) 89
weinen 39
weiter|gehen 30
werben **91**
werden **92**
werfen **93**
wetten 3
widersprechen +*dat*
(sich *dat*) 71
widerstehen +*dat* 73
widerstreben 19
widmen (sich *acc*) 4
wiederholen 5
wieder|sehen
(sich *acc*) 65
winken 39
wirken 39
wischen 49
wissen **94**
wohnen 39
wollen **95**
wundern (sich *acc*)
(*haben*) 89
wünschen (sich *dat*) 49
würfeln 35
zahlen 39
zählen 39
zappeln (*sein*) 35
zeichnen 54

zeigen (sich *acc*) 39
zensieren 77
zerbrechen 12
zerren 39
zerschlagen (sich *acc*) 60
zerschneiden 61
zerstören **96**
zerstreuen (sich *acc*) 96
ziehen **97**
zielen 39
zischen 49
zittern (*haben*) 89
zögern (*haben*) 89
zu|bereiten 3
züchten 3
zucken 39
zu|geben 29
zu|gehen 30
zu|hören + *dat* 5
zu|kommen 41
zu|lassen 43
zu|machen 5
zu|muten 3
zu|nehmen 53
zurecht|finden (sich *acc*) 25
zurecht|kommen 41
zurück|fahren 22
zurück|gehen 30
zurück|kehren 16
zurück|kommen 41
zurück|legen 16
zurück|treten 80
zurück|zahlen 16
zurück|ziehen 97
zu|sagen 5
zusammen|brechen 12
zusammen|fassen 16
zusammen|hängen 70
zusammen|legen 16

zusammen|nehmen (sich *acc*) 53
zusammen|stellen 16
zu|schauen 5
zu|sehen +*dat* 65
zu|stimmen 5
zu|treffen 79
zweifeln 35
zwingen **98**
zwinkern (*haben*) 89
zwitschern (*haben*) 89

MORE FANTASTIC TITLES IN THE COLLINS EASY LEARNING GERMAN RANGE:

Easy Learning German Dictionary
ISBN 978-0-00-733150-5

Easy Learning German Grammar
ISBN 978-0-00-736781-8

Easy Learning German Verbs
ISBN 978-0-00-736976-8

Easy Learning German Words
ISBN 978-0-00-725279-4

Easy Learning Complete German
ISBN 978-0-00-732494-1

The bestselling Collins Easy Learning range also includes French, Spanish, Italian, Irish, Polish and Chinese titles. For further information visit **www.collinslanguage.com**

Want to see for yourself?
Go online to
www.livemocha.com/trial
and enter this code:
07VF-6IZ9-CHX3-0XAP

About Livemocha
Livemocha redefines language learning by combining dynamic online courses in over 30 languages with the world's largest community of language learners. Livemocha has over 7 million members from over 190 countries.

FREE TRIAL OF LIVEMOCHA ACTIVE GERMAN

Powered by Collins
Language learning for real life

Livemocha Active German is an innovative and effective online course that will teach you to speak German in real-life situations. The course combines world-class content from Collins with the world's largest community of language learners on Livemocha.

- Real German conversation videos, with subtitles in both English and German
- Grammar and vocabulary exercises to build your skills and measure your progress
- Speaking and writing practice and feedback from native German speakers

Collins and Livemocha reserve the right to withdraw this free trial offer at any time.

Livemocha

Collins